

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

**Northwest Power and Conservation Council's
Columbia River Basin
Fish and Wildlife Program**

Draft for Public Review
September 2, 2008
Council document 2008-11

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1
2
3 **I. Introduction 7**
4 **A. The Northwest Power and Conservation Council and the Columbia River**
5 **Basin Fish and Wildlife Program 7**
6 **B. The Program Framework..... 8**
7 **C. Implementation and Performance..... 12**
8
9 **II. Basinwide Provisions 15**
10 **A. Vision for the Columbia River Basin 15**
11 **1. The Overall Vision for the Fish and Wildlife Program..... 15**
12 **2. Planning Assumptions 16**
13 **B. Scientific Foundation and Principles..... 20**
14 **1. Purpose of the Scientific Foundation 20**
15 **2. Scientific Principles..... 20**
16 **C. Biological Objectives..... 23**
17 **1. Basin-Level Biological Objectives 23**
18 **2. Further Development of Biological Objectives 32**
19 **D. Basinwide Strategies 34**
20 **1. Habitat Strategies..... 35**
21 **2. Non-Native Species Strategies..... 41**
22 **3. Artificial Production Strategies 42**
23 **4. Harvest Strategies 47**
24 **5. Hydrosystem Passage and Operations Strategies 50**
25 **6. Wildlife Strategies..... 60**
26 **7. Resident Fish Substitution Strategies..... 65**
27 **8. Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and Reporting Strategies..... 66**
28
29 **III. Ecological Provinces..... 72**
30
31 **IV. Ocean 77**
32 **A. Ocean Strategies..... 77**
33 **1. Manage for Variability 78**
34 **2. Distinguish Ocean Effects from Other Effects 78**
35
36 **V. The Columbia River Estuary 79**
37 **A. Estuary Strategies 79**
38
39 **VI. Mainstem Plan 80**
40 **A. The Context for the Mainstem Plan 83**
41 **B. Vision of the Mainstem Plan 87**
42 **C. Biological Objectives..... 89**
43 **1. Overarching Objectives and Priorities For the Mainstem..... 89**
44 **2. Specific Objectives and Performance Standards for Habitat Characteristics**
45 **and for Population Performance 91**

1	D. Mainstem Strategies.....	97
2	1. Overarching Strategies.....	97
3	2. Strategies in Specific Areas.....	101
4	3. Spill.....	108
5	4. Surface Passage Systems and New Fish Passage Technologies.....	111
6	5. Juvenile Bypass Systems.....	112
7	6. Adult Passage.....	113
8	7. Lamprey and Sturgeon Passage.....	114
9	8. Water Management.....	116
10	9. Climate Change Planning Considerations.....	126
11	10. Control of Predators.....	127
12	11. Non-Native Species Evaluation and Control.....	129
13	12. Mainstem Monitoring and Evaluation.....	130
14	13. Research.....	131
15	14. Fish Passage Center.....	133
16	15. Annual and In-Season Decision-making.....	136
17	16. Mid-Columbia Hydroelectric Projects.....	138
18	17. Hells Canyon Hydroelectric Project.....	139
19	18. Reintroduction of Anadromous Fish in Blocked Areas.....	140
20		
21	VII. Subbasins.....	142
22	A. Elements of Subbasin Plans.....	142
23	B. Implementing Plans at the Subbasin Level.....	142
24	C. Development and Submission of Subbasin Plans for Areas without Subbasin	
25	Plans.....	143
26	D. Updating Existing Subbasin Plans.....	143
27	E. Developing Subbasin Summary Tables.....	143
28		
29	VIII. Implementation Provisions.....	152
30	A. Implementing Measures Recommended for 2008-2018.....	152
31	B. Project Review Process.....	154
32	1. Objectives of Project Review.....	155
33	2. Step Review Process.....	155
34	C. Project Reporting and Management.....	159
35	D. Project Funding Priorities.....	159
36	1. Anadromous Fish, Resident Fish and Wildlife.....	160
37	2. Land and Water Acquisition Funds.....	160
38	3. Science and Policy Conference.....	165
39	E. Program Reporting and Annual Report to Governors and Congress.....	165
40	F. Program Coordination.....	165
41	G. Coordination with Other Regional Programs.....	166
42	H. In-lieu.....	168
43	I. Independent Scientific Review.....	168
44	1. The Independent Scientific Review Panel.....	168
45	2. The Independent Scientific Advisory Board.....	170

1		
2		3. Administration of the Independent Scientific Review Panel, the Scientific
3		Peer Review Groups, and the Independent Scientific Advisory Board 172
4	IX. Tribal Rights, Water Rights, and the Role of Fish 175	
5	and Wildlife Agencies 175	
6	A. Recognition of Tribal Role 175	
7	B. Water Rights 175	
8	C. Role of Fish and Wildlife Agencies 175	
9		
10	X. Appendix 179	
11	Appendix A: Glossary and Acronyms 180	
12	Appendix B: Hydroelectric Development Conditions 202	
13	Appendix C: Wildlife Provisions 209	
14	Appendix D. Findings 216	
15	Appendix E. Analysis of the Adequacy, Efficiency, Economy and Reliability of	
16	the Power System. 216	
17	Appendix F. Estimates of Hydropower-Related Losses 216	
18		

~~I. Executive Summary~~

~~Historically, salmon and steelhead migrated through much of the Columbia River Basin, an area the size of France, that includes portions of seven states and British Columbia. These fish once spawned as far upriver in the Columbia as the headwaters at Columbia Lake, British Columbia, 1,200 miles from the mouth of the river near Astoria, Oregon. Salmon and steelhead migrated up the Snake River, the Columbia's largest tributary, as far as Shoshone Falls, 615 miles from the confluence and more than 900 miles from the Pacific Ocean. The Columbia River Basin also supported numerous populations of resident fish—those that don't migrate to the ocean—and wildlife.~~

~~Beginning in the late 1800s and increasing from the 1930s on, there was a large decline of salmon and steelhead in the Columbia River and its tributaries, from an estimated peak of 10–16 million adult fish returning to the basin each year to about 1 million in recent years. While loss of habitat, harvest, and variable ocean conditions have all contributed to this decline, it is estimated that the portion of the decline attributable to the construction and operation of hydroelectric dams in the Columbia River Basin is, on average, about 5 million to about 11 million adult fish. Hydroelectric dams also adversely affected resident fish and wildlife in the basin.~~

~~In 1980, Congress passed the Pacific Northwest Electric Power Planning and Conservation Act, which authorized the states of Idaho, Montana, Oregon and Washington to create the Northwest Power Planning Council. The Act directs the Council to prepare a program to protect, mitigate and enhance fish and wildlife of the Columbia River Basin that have been affected by the construction and operation of hydroelectric dams while also assuring the Pacific Northwest an adequate, efficient, economical and reliable power supply. The Act also directs the Council to inform the public about fish, wildlife and energy issues and to involve the public in its decision-making.~~

~~The Council's Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program is the largest regional effort in the nation to recover, rebuild, and mitigate impacts on fish and wildlife. The Council adopted the first program in November 1982.~~

~~The 2000 program marks a significant departure from past versions, which consisted primarily of a collection of measures directing specific activities. The 2000 Program establishes a basinwide vision for fish and wildlife—the intended outcome of the program—along with biological objectives and action strategies that are consistent with the vision. Ultimately, the program will be implemented through subbasin plans developed locally in the more than 50 tributary subbasins of the Columbia and amended into the program by the Council. Those plans will be consistent with the basinwide vision and objectives in the program, and its underlying foundation of ecological science.~~

~~The 2000 program addresses all of the “Four Hs” of impacts on fish and wildlife—hydropower, habitat, hatcheries and harvest.~~

1
2 In preparing the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program, the Council solicited recommendations
3 from the region's fish and wildlife agencies, Indian tribes, and others, as required by the
4 Northwest Power Act. The agencies and tribes responded, and the Council also received
5 proposals from other interested parties. In all, the Council received more than 50
6 recommendations totaling more than 2,000 pages. After reviewing the recommendations,
7 the Council prepared a draft and then conducted an extensive public comment period
8 before finalizing the program in December 2000.

9
10 The Council's responsibility is to mitigate the impact of hydropower dams on all fish
11 and wildlife in the Columbia River Basin, including endangered species, through a
12 program of enhancement and protection. As a planning agency required by law to balance
13 fish and wildlife enhancement against impacts to the region's hydropower system, the
14 Council is uniquely positioned as an honest broker among the agencies, tribes, electric
15 utilities and environmental and business interests whose activities and legal rights involve
16 the rivers, hydropower, fish and wildlife. In this role, the Council provides the most
17 objective public forum to discuss and debate fish and wildlife issues.

18
19 Through its fish and wildlife program, the Council provides guidance and
20 recommendations on hundreds of millions of dollars per year of Bonneville Power
21 Administration revenues to mitigate the impact of hydropower on fish and wildlife. That
22 amount is expected to increase in the future as enhancement efforts expand and
23 accelerate. The funding is provided by Bonneville from the sale of electricity generated at
24 29 federal hydropower dams and one non-federal nuclear power plant in the Columbia
25 River Basin.

26
27 The Council ensures the public accountability of these expenditures by submitting each
28 project proposed for funding under its program to a thorough review by the region's fish
29 and wildlife agencies and Indian tribes, the public, and by an 11-member panel of
30 independent scientists, the Independent Scientific Review Panel. Established by
31 Congress, panel members are appointed by the Council from recommendations of the
32 National Academy of Sciences.

33
34 **This program, and more information about the Council, its fish, wildlife and power**
35 **planning activities, and public involvement opportunities, can be found at the**
36 **Council's website,**

1 | **I. Introduction**

2 |
3 | **A. The Northwest Power and Conservation ~~Planning~~ Council and the**
4 | **Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program**

5 |
6 | The Northwest Power ~~and Conservation Planning~~ Council, an interstate compact agency
7 | of Idaho, Montana, Oregon and Washington, was established under the authority of the
8 | Pacific Northwest Electric Power Planning and Conservation Act of 1980 (**Northwest**
9 | **Power Act or Act**). The Act directs the Council to develop a program to “protect,
10 | mitigate, and enhance fish and wildlife, including related spawning grounds and habitat,
11 | on the Columbia River and its tributaries ... affected by the development, operation, and
12 | management of [hydroelectric projects] while assuring the Pacific Northwest an
13 | adequate, efficient, economical, and reliable power supply.” The Act also directs the
14 | Council to ensure widespread public involvement in the formulation of regional power
15 | **and fish and wildlife** policies.

16 |
17 | This document is the Council’s *Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program*. As a
18 | planning, policy-making and reviewing body, the Council develops ~~and then monitors~~
19 | ~~implementation of~~ the program, **and then monitors which is its** ~~implementation~~ by
20 | the Bonneville Power Administration, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, the Bureau of
21 | Reclamation and the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and its licensees.

22 |
23 | The Northwest Power Act directs the Council to develop its program and make periodic
24 | major revisions by first requesting recommendations from the region’s federal and state
25 | fish and wildlife agencies, appropriate Indian tribes (those within the basin) and other
26 | interested parties. **The Council also takes comment from designated entities and the**
27 | **public on those recommendations.** ~~When~~ ~~The~~ ~~Council~~ ~~then~~ issues a draft amended
28 | program, **initiating** an extensive public comment period **on the recommendations and**
29 | **proposed program amendments** ~~is initiated~~ that includes **extensive written comments,**
30 | public hearings in each of the four states, and consultations with interested parties.

31 |
32 | -After closing the comment period, and following a review and deliberation period, the
33 | Council adopts the revised program. **The Council develops its final program on the**
34 | **basis of the amendment recommendations, information submitted in support of the**
35 | **recommendations, and views and information obtained through public comment**
36 | **and participation and through consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies,**
37 | **tribes, Bonneville customers and others. The program amendments are not**
38 | **concluded until the Council adopts written findings as part of the program**
39 | **explaining its basis for adopting or not adopting program amendment**
40 | **recommendations.**

41 | ~~This must occur within a year of the deadline for receiving recommendations for~~
42 | ~~amendments.~~

B. A New Program Structure

This is the fifth revision of the Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program since the Council adopted its first program in November 1982. This time, as in the series of program amendments between 1991 and 1995, the program is being revised in phases. Unlike past versions of the program, which were criticized by scientists for consisting primarily of a number of measures that called for specific actions without a clear, programwide foundation of scientific principles, this version of the program expresses goals and objectives for the entire basin based on a scientific foundation of ecological principles. In the future, the Council will amend into the program locally developed plans for the more than 50 tributary subbasins of the Columbia River and a plan for the mainstem. These plans will be consistent with the goals and objectives for the basin and also with goals and objectives that will be developed for the 11 ecological provinces of the basin. The provinces are groups of adjacent subbasins with similar ecological features.

With the subbasin plans in place, the program will be organized in three levels: 1) a basinwide level that articulates objectives, principles and coordination elements that apply generally to all fish and wildlife projects, or to a class of projects, that are implemented throughout the basin; 2) an ecological province level that addresses the 11 unique ecological areas of the Columbia River Basin, each representing a particular type of terrain and corresponding biological community; and 3) a level that addresses the more than 50 subbasins, each containing a specific waterway and the surrounding uplands.

The Council believes this unique program structure, goal-oriented and science-based, will result in a more carefully focused, scientifically credible and publicly accountable program that will direct the region's substantial fish and wildlife investment to the places and species where it will do the most good.

BC. The Program Framework Concept

The program's goals, objectives, scientific foundation and actions are **organized structured** in a "framework," an **integrated approach to organizational concept for regional** fish and wildlife mitigation and recovery ~~efforts that the Council introduced in the 1994-1995 version of the program.~~ The 2000 program, organized wWith the framework concept, ~~is the Council intend~~ed to bring together, as closely as possible, Endangered Species Act requirements, the broader requirements of the Northwest Power Act, and the policies of the states and Indian tribes ~~of the Columbia River Basin~~ into a comprehensive program ~~that has with~~ a solid scientific foundation. The program ~~also~~ states explicitly what the Council is trying to accomplish, links the program to a specific set of objectives, describes the strategies to be employed and establishes a scientific basis for the program. Thus, the program guides decision-making and provides a reference point for evaluating success.

1 To develop a framework for the program, in November 1998 the Council initiated the
2 Multi Species Framework Project. The Framework Project was managed by a state-
3 federal tribal committee and administered by the Council. The project brought together
4 hundreds of individuals representing state and federal agencies, Indian tribes,
5 environmental and industry groups, and interested citizens to propose and discuss
6 potential fish and wildlife recovery actions. The actions ranged from breaching dams to
7 leaving them in place, and from shutting down fish hatcheries and fish harvest to
8 boosting artificial production of fish. From more than 100 actions proposed in the
9 process, the Council assembled seven alternatives for analysis using a state-of-the-art
10 analytical system called Ecosystem Diagnosis and Treatment (EDT). The EDT analysis
11 addressed the biological benefits of each alternative, and a separate Human Effects
12 Analysis addressed the economic and social impacts and benefits of the alternatives.

13
14 The Council did not choose a specific alternative for this version of the program. Rather,
15 the goals and objectives in this program were derived from the recommendations
16 received from the region for amendments to this program and from among several of the
17 Framework Project alternatives. Through an amendment proceeding that began in
18 January 2000, the Council restructured the program with a comprehensive, underlying
19 framework of general scientific and policy principles that apply to the entire Columbia
20 River Basin. The fundamental elements of the program **framework** are:

- 21 • The vision, which describes what the program is trying to accomplish with regard
22 to fish and wildlife, **in the context of and** other desired benefits from the river;
- 23 • The biological objectives, which describe the ecological conditions **and**
24 **population characteristics** needed to achieve the vision; **and**
- 25 • The implementation strategies, procedures, **assumptions** and guidelines, which
26 guide or describe the actions leading to the desired ecological conditions; **and**;
- 27 • **The scientific foundation, which ties the program framework together.**

28 In other words, the vision implies biological objectives that set the strategies. In turn,
29 strategies address biological objectives and fulfill the vision. The scientific foundation
30 links the components of the framework, explaining why the Council believes certain
31 kinds of management actions will result in particular physical habitat or ecological
32 conditions of the basin, **and** why the ecological conditions will affect fish and wildlife
33 populations or communities **in a desired way to achieve the vision.**

34
35 **The program is organized in three levels: 1) a basinwide level that contains the**
36 **program vision, scientific foundation, biological objectives, general strategies, and**
37 **implementation provisions that apply generally across the program and are**
38 **implemented throughout the basin; 2) an ecological province level that divides the**
39 **Columbia River Basin into 11 unique ecological areas, each representing a**
40 **particular type of terrain and corresponding biological community; and 3) a**
41 **subbasin level, with integrated plans that contain the specific objectives and**
42 **measures for the nearly 60 subbasins and mainstem reaches of the Columbia, as well**
43 **as a special plan tying together the mainstem Columbia and Snake rivers and a plan**
44 **for the Columbia River estuary.**

1
2 **Since its inception in 1982, the Council’s program has emphasized an adaptive-**
3 **management approach. This is imperative given the significant level of uncertainty**
4 **as to whether any particular protection or mitigation activity will contribute to long-**
5 **term sustained improvement in fish or wildlife adversely affected by the**
6 **hydrosystem. This means, among other things, the need for a close and appropriate**
7 **interaction between science and policy decision-making. Policy-makers must**
8 **develop clear and conceptually consistent management actions and corresponding**
9 **questions that focus on the uncertainties inherent in those actions. Scientists must**
10 **help policy-makers by explaining the current level of technical knowledge and the**
11 **relative confidence level the scientists have in that information, describe how best to**
12 **monitor and address the uncertainties, and frame the relative risks of the different**
13 **policy options the science may present. Policy-makers must then manage the**
14 **uncertainty and risk in making and adapting decisions.**
15

16
17 Under the Northwest Power Act, the Council’s fish and wildlife program is not intended
18 to address all fish and wildlife problems in the basin from all sources. ~~But~~The Council
19 adopted the vision, objectives, strategies and scientific foundation with the belief that
20 they will complement and help support other fish and wildlife recovery actions in the
21 region.
22

23
24 ~~This program recognizes that others besides the Council are developing plans and taking~~
25 ~~actions to address these issues. In particular, the four Northwest states and the Columbia~~
26 ~~Basin’s 13 Indian tribes each have fish and wildlife initiatives under way. Many of these~~
27 ~~parties already have subbasin and watershed planning initiatives under way, and are also~~
28 ~~addressing Endangered Species Act concerns.~~
29

30 Throughout the basin, the ~~National Marine~~NOAA’s **National Marine** Fisheries Service
31 **(NOAA Fisheries)** and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service are administering the
32 Endangered Species Act, which requires information gathering, planning, and mitigation
33 actions. In addition, the Environmental Protection Agency, in cooperation with the **other**
34 **federal agencies**, states and tribes, is taking actions to achieve compliance with the Clean
35 Water Act. ~~(As as~~ used elsewhere in this program, “applicable federal laws” includes
36 both the Endangered Species Act and the Clean Water Act. **The four Northwest states**
37 **and the Columbia Basin’s Indian tribes also all have fish and wildlife initiatives**
38 **under way.**
39

40 ~~This~~**The Program** framework is not intended to pre-empt the legal authorities of any of
41 these parties, but it does provide an opportunity for each of these regional participants to
42 coordinate information gathering, planning, and implementation of recovery actions on a
43 voluntary basis. That is, the Council’s program is designed to link to, and accommodate,
44 the needs of other programs in the basin that affect fish and wildlife. This includes
45 meeting the needs of the Endangered Species Act by describing the kinds of ecological

1 change needed to improve the survival and productivity of the diverse fish and wildlife
2 populations in the basin.

3
4 Measures implementing this program are funded by the Bonneville Power Administration
5 through revenues collected from electricity ratepayers. Although Bonneville has fish and
6 wildlife responsibilities under both the Endangered Species Act and the Northwest Power
7 Act, ~~in many cases,~~ both responsibilities ~~are can be~~ met in the same set of actions.

8 Therefore, in recommending projects for funding under this program, the Council will
9 address both sets of responsibilities wherever feasible. Again, knowledge of the plans and
10 activities of other regional participants will be essential for the Council to be able to
11 assure that the projects it recommends for funding are coordinated with, and do not
12 duplicate, the actions of others.

1 | **CD. Implementation and Performance**~~During a Period of Transition~~

2 |
3 | Since the last revision of the program and the development of the program
4 | framework in 2000, ~~much has been accomplished.~~ The Council sparked the
5 | development of nearly 60 subbasin plans and then added the plans to the program,
6 | providing a coordinated and integrated home for fish and wildlife actions across the
7 | basin. The federal, state and tribal governments have been working with local
8 | partners to expand the subbasin plans into draft and final ESA recovery plans in
9 | areas of the basin that include ESA-listed populations.

10 |
11 | Then in 2007-08, Bonneville and other agencies of the federal government
12 | committed to extensive implementation plans built on this broader planning
13 | foundation, commitments to fund an extensive set of actions over the next ten years
14 | to benefit listed and unlisted anadromous and resident fish across the Columbia
15 | River Basin. These include mainstem, estuary and tributary habitat, production,
16 | harvest, and monitoring actions committed to by the agencies as part of the
17 | consultation resulting in the 2008 Biological Opinion for the Federal Columbia
18 | River Power System and in the Columbia Basin Fish Accords (“Accords”) executed
19 | with certain Indian tribes and states. ~~Many Most~~ areas of the program are covered
20 | by multi-year implementation plans. In areas not covered, the core implementation
21 | actions are well known and will be shaped into similar multi-year implementation
22 | plans in the near future.

23 |
24 | All these plans and implementation actions are built on the mainstem and off-site
25 | mitigation foundations developed in the Council’s program over the past 27 years,
26 | from the water management and passage measures in the 1982 Program to the
27 | 2004-05 subbasin plans. The program has identified the basin’s biological potential
28 | and the opportunities for improvements. As a consequence of the Accords and the
29 | biological opinions, there are significant financial commitments to implement suites
30 | of actions over the next ten years to try to capture that potential.

31 |
32 | The focus of the program and the Council now turns to performance. The revised
33 | program has increased emphasis on periodic science review of new and on-going
34 | actions; increased requirements for reporting of results and accountability; an
35 | emphasis on adaptive management as a way to solve continuing uncertainties; a
36 | renewed push to develop a better set of quantitative objectives for the regional
37 | program; a commitment to a periodic and systematic exchange of science and policy
38 | information; and especially an expanded monitoring and evaluation framework
39 | with a commitment to use the information to make better decisions and report
40 | frequently on program progress.

41 |
42 | ~~In the future, the program will be implemented primarily through subbasin plans, which~~
43 | ~~will be consistent with the program-wide goals, objectives and scientific foundation.~~
44 | ~~While those plans are under development, the Council has provided for ongoing project~~
45 | ~~review and funding.~~

1 A subbasin assessment and planning process will complete the program at the subbasin
2 level and provide the implementation plans out of which fish and wildlife projects are
3 proposed for Bonneville funding to implement the program.
4

5 The subbasin assessment is a technical exercise designed to identify the biological
6 potential of each subbasin and the opportunities for restoration. Based on this, fish and
7 wildlife managers, land managers, private landowners, and other people responsible for
8 fish and wildlife and habitat conditions in the respective subbasins can develop subbasin
9 plans consisting of goals, objectives, strategies, and proposed actions that are consistent
10 with the objectives and criteria in the program.
11

12 Depending on the extent and quality of past assessment and planning work, the planning
13 process in a particular subbasin could range from a relatively quick and straightforward
14 review and updating of existing plans to a fundamental and extensive development
15 process. Using the program amendment procedures in the Northwest Power Act, the
16 Council intends to review subbasin plans and adopt agreed-upon plans into the program.
17

18 Meanwhile, the Council will continue to make annual recommendations to Bonneville
19 regarding funding of projects to implement the program. The Council relies on the
20 recommendations of the Independent Scientific Review Panel and the region's fish and
21 wildlife managers as the basis for its funding recommendations. The Council and the
22 Independent Scientific Review Panel also have a responsibility for reviewing other fish
23 and wildlife projects proposed for funding by federal agencies and reimbursed by
24 Bonneville.
25

26 The program describes a rolling project review process in which one-third of the program
27 and fish and wildlife projects funded by Bonneville are reviewed each year in some depth
28 by the fish and wildlife managers, the Independent Scientific Review Panel and the
29 Council. An important criterion for a funding recommendation is consistency with the
30 vision, objectives and strategies in the revised program and in the relevant subbasin plan,
31 when adopted. In the rolling project review, the priorities for actions at the basin,
32 province, and subbasin level will be reflected as budget priorities for implementation of
33 specific projects.
34

35 The program includes procedures for monitoring and evaluating biological benefits
36 gained by actions taken under the program. The evaluation process feeds information
37 back into the program planning and project review process, with adaptive management
38 mechanisms for revising program objectives or actions if what has been adopted proves
39 unsuccessful.
40

41 **III.** Because this program has a significantly different structure and implementation
42 procedure than past versions of the program, the Council wanted to make a provision for
43 projects initially funded under previous versions of the program to continue — as long as
44 they are reviewed by the Independent Scientific Review Panel and recommended for
45 funding by the Council. Thus, unless expressly modified by the provisions of this
46 program, existing projects **will continue to be in effect.**

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

~~Most of the existing projects in the program are specific items for implementation at specific locations. As part of the subbasin planning process described above, these measures will be reviewed, together with proposals for new measures, for inclusion in subbasin plans. When subbasin plan is adopted, it will include both the new measures for that subbasin and the existing measures that will be continuing. At that time, the measures currently in the program for that subbasin will be replaced by the subbasin plan.~~

1 II. Basinwide Provisions

3 A. Vision for the Columbia River Basin

5 The vision is the outcome intended for this program. Actions taken at the basin,
6 province, and subbasin levels should be consistent with, and designed to fulfill, ~~the~~^{this}
7 vision. Thus, ~~theis~~ vision guides the choice of biological objectives and, in turn, the
8 selection of strategies.

10 1. The Overall Vision for the Fish and Wildlife Program

12 The vision for this program is a Columbia River ecosystem that sustains an
13 abundant, productive, and diverse community of fish and wildlife, mitigating
14 across the basin for the adverse effects to fish and wildlife caused by the
15 development and operation of the hydrosystem ~~and providing the benefits from~~
16 ~~fish and wildlife valued by the people of the region~~. This ecosystem provides
17 abundant opportunities for tribal trust and treaty-right harvest and for non-tribal
18 harvest and the conditions that allow for the recovery of the fish and wildlife
19 affected by the operation of the hydrosystem and listed under the Endangered
20 Species Act.

22 Wherever feasible, this program's **vision** will be accomplished by protecting and
23 restoring the natural ecological functions, habitats, and biological diversity of the
24 Columbia River Basin. ~~W~~~~in those places where this is not feasible, other~~
25 methods that are compatible with naturally reproducing fish and wildlife
26 populations will be used, **including certain forms of artificial production**.
27 Where impacts have irrevocably changed the ecosystem, the program will protect
28 and enhance the habitat and species assemblages compatible with the altered
29 ecosystem. Actions taken under this program must be cost-effective and
30 consistent with an adequate, efficient, economical, and reliable electrical power
31 supply.

33 **The development and operation of the hydrosystem is not the only human**
34 **cause of adverse effects to fish and wildlife in the Columbia River Basin.-**
35 **However, i**~~m~~**proving conditions for these fish and wildlife affected by the**
36 **hydrosystem is a responsibility the Council and its program shares with**
37 **citizens, private entities, and government agencies across the region.**

1 **2. Specific Planning Assumptions**

2
3 As part of this vision, the Council ~~also~~ adopts the following policy judgments and
4 planning assumptions for the fish and wildlife program:-
5

- 6
- 7 • No single activity is sufficient to recover and rebuild fish and wildlife species
8 in the Columbia River Basin. Successful protection, mitigation, and recovery
9 efforts must involve a ~~broad range of strategies~~ **coordinated strategy** for
10 habitat protection and improvement, hydrosystem reform, artificial
11 production, and harvest management. **There also must be coordination with
12 actions not funded under this program.**
 - 13 • ~~The Bonneville Power Administration should make available sufficient funds
14 to implement measures in the program in a timely fashion.~~ Bonneville Power
15 Administration and its ratepayers shall bear the cost of measures designed to
16 deal with adverse impacts caused by the development and operation of the
17 hydroelectric facilities **only. The hydroelectric power system is only one
18 factor in the loss of fish and wildlife in the Columbia River Basin. The
19 Council’s program includes measures that directly address the impacts of
20 the hydrosystem on fish and wildlife. The program also includes
21 measures that address limiting factors not caused by the hydrosystem, as
22 the Northwest Power Act authorizes the program to contain and
23 Bonneville to fund off-site protection and mitigation measures to
24 compensate for losses arising from the development and operation of the
25 hydroelectric facilities of the Columbia River and its tributaries. The
26 “nexus” to the hydrosystem that allows a measure to be an appropriate
27 part of the program is whether the measure will provide protection or
28 mitigation benefits for fish or wildlife adversely affected by the
29 hydrosystem, benefits that can be said to compensate for effects not
30 already mitigated.**

31
32 **On that basis,** the program identifies a comprehensive set of interrelated
33 fish and wildlife problems and responsive strategies. While all such
34 strategies are within Bonneville’s authority to fund as offsite mitigation to
35 address its mitigation obligation, the extent of Bonneville’s funding
36 obligations **in any particular rate period** will be determined through the
37 program’s implementation provisions. **At any one time, program
38 implementation will include both measures addressing the direct
39 impacts of the hydrosystem and off-site mitigation measures.
40 Together they must be sufficient to mitigate for the impacts of the
41 Columbia hydropower system on fish and wildlife. The Council will
42 work with Bonneville, the fish and wildlife managers, and others to
43 develop budgets, implementation plans, and project recommendations
44 that provide sufficient guidance to Bonneville about the level of effort**

necessary in any particular period to be acting in a manner consistent with the program.

Habitat

- This is a habitat-based program, ~~rebuilding~~. **The program aims to rebuild healthy, naturally producing fish and wildlife populations by protecting, mitigating, and restoring habitats and the biological systems within them, including anadromous fish migration corridors. Artificial production and other non-natural interventions should be consistent with ~~the central~~ **this effort to protect and restore habitat** and avoid adverse impacts to native fish and wildlife species.**
- ~~Management actions must be taken in an adaptive, experimental manner because ecosystems are inherently variable and highly complex. This includes using~~ **Because ecosystems are highly complex and variable, actions addressing ecosystem problems must be taken in an adaptive, experimental manner. Where the efficacy of management actions is** ~~are uncertain and may involve significant risk, actions must include~~ experimental designs and techniques as ~~part of management actions, and integrating well as~~ monitoring and research ~~with those management actions to evaluate their ecosystem effects on the ecosystem.~~
- **Ocean conditions should be considered in evaluating freshwater habitat management to understand all stages of the salmon and steelhead life cycle.**
- **Climate change could have significant impacts on mainstem Columbia and Snake river flows in terms of water quality, water quantity, and temperature. Possible changes in regional snowpack, river flows, and reservoir elevations due to climate change could have a profound impact on the success of restoration efforts and the status of Columbia Basin fish and wildlife populations. The Council acknowledges that global climate change is not directly caused by the Federal Columbia River Power System (FCRPS). However, to the extent climate change may adversely impact fish and wildlife affected by the hydrosystem, it is appropriate for the Council to seek the best available scientific knowledge regarding the effects of climate change on Columbia River Basin ~~the Basin's~~ fish and wildlife and to consider that scientific data when recommending strategies and implementing measures to ~~mitigate~~ **compensate for** losses arising from the development and operation of the hydroelectric facilities of the Columbia River and its tributaries. Planning efforts must also take**

1 into account the potential effects that increases and shifts in human
2 population may have on the condition of fish and wildlife habitats.

3
4 Hydrosystem

- 5 • Mainstem hydrosystem operations and fish–passage efforts should be
6 directed at optimizing the survival of focal species. Such efforts should
7 include re-establishing natural river processes to the extent feasible and
8 consistent with the Council’s responsibility to maintain an adequate,
9 efficient, economical, and reliable power supply.

- 10
11 • Actions to improve juvenile and adult fish passage through mainstem dams,
12 including fish transportation actions and capital improvement measures,
13 should protect biological diversity by benefiting the range of species, stocks,
14 and life-history types in the river, and should favor solutions that best fit
15 natural behavior patterns and river processes, while maximizing fish survival
16 through the hydroelectric projects. Survival in the natural river should be the
17 baseline against which to measure the effectiveness of other passage methods.

- 18
19 ~~• For the purpose of planning for this fish and wildlife program, and particularly~~
20 ~~the hydrosystem portion of the program, the Council assumes that, in the near~~
21 ~~term, the breaching of the four federal dams on the lower Snake River will not~~
22 ~~occur. However, the Council is obliged under law to revise its fish and~~
23 ~~wildlife program every five years, at a minimum. If, within that five-year~~
24 ~~period, the status of the lower Snake River dams or any other major~~
25 ~~component of the Federal Columbia River Power System has changed, the~~
26 ~~Council can take that into account as part of the review process.~~

- 27
28 ~~• Mainstem hydrosystem operations and fish passage efforts should be directed~~
29 ~~at re-establishing natural river processes where feasible and consistent with~~
30 ~~the Council’s responsibility for maintaining an adequate, efficient,~~
31 ~~economical, and reliable power supply.~~

- 32
33 ~~• The effect of ocean habitat on salmonid species should be considered in~~
34 ~~evaluating freshwater habitat management to understand all stages of the~~
35 ~~salmon and steelhead life cycle.~~

- 36
37 • Systemwide water management, including flow augmentation from storage
38 reservoirs, should balance the needs of anadromous fish species with those of
39 resident fish species in upstream storage reservoirs so that actions taken to
40 advance one species do **not unnecessarily disadvantage**~~not disadvantage~~
41 ~~unnecessarily come at the expense of~~ other species.

42
43 Artificial Production

- 44 • There is an obligation to provide fish and wildlife mitigation where habitat has
45 been permanently lost due to hydroelectric development. Artificial production
46 of fish may be used to replace capacity, bolster productivity, and alleviate

1 harvest pressure on weak, naturally spawning resident and anadromous fish
2 populations. Restoration of anadromous fish into areas blocked by dams
3 should be actively pursued where feasible.
4

- 5 • Artificial production actions must have an experimental, adaptive-
6 management design. This design will allow the region to evaluate benefits,
7 address scientific uncertainties, and improve hatchery survival while
8 minimizing the impact on, and if possible benefiting, fish that spawn
9 naturally.

10 Harvest

- 12 • Harvest can provide significant cultural and economic benefits to the region,
13 and the program should seek to increase harvest opportunities consistent with
14 sound biological management practices. Harvest rates should be based on
15 population-specific adult escapement objectives designed to protect and
16 recover naturally spawning populations.
17
- 18 ~~• Achieving the vision requires that habitat, artificial production, harvest, and
19 hydrosystem actions are thoughtfully coordinated with one another. There also
20 must be coordination among actions taken at the subbasin, province, and basin
21 levels, including actions not funded under this program. Accordingly, creating
22 an appropriate structure for planning and coordination is a vital part of this
23 program.~~

B. Scientific Foundation and Principles

The scientific foundation reflects the best available scientific knowledge. The scientific principles summarize this knowledge at a broad level. The actions taken at the basin, province, and subbasin levels to fulfill the vision should be consistent with, and based upon, these principles.

1. Purpose of the Scientific Foundation

~~In developing a program to fulfill the vision statement above, the Council is relying on the best available scientific knowledge.~~ While the vision is a policy choice about what the program should accomplish, the scientific foundation describes our best understanding of the biological realities that will govern how ~~this~~**the vision** is accomplished. ~~The program can succeed only as it recognizes these realities and builds upon them.~~ Thus, ~~the~~ scientific foundation is **not only** the basis for the working hypotheses that underlie this program. ~~It~~ **but** also provides specific guidance for program measures. ~~For example, the strategies for the use of artificial production are an application of the scientific foundation to the use of hatcheries for raising fish within the Columbia River Basin.~~

~~The scientific foundation consists of the scientific principles, a detailed discussion of those principles, the geographic structure of the program, and a set of more specific scientific rules and hypotheses. Only the scientific principles and the geographic structure appear in this volume of the program; the remainder of the foundation is in the Technical Appendix for this program.~~**In addressing the needs of Columbia River Basin fish and wildlife, the Council recognizes the need for prompt action to arrest declines in many populations despite a limited or conflicting scientific basis. Congress specifically addressed this challenge by directing the Council, in the Northwest Power Act, to use the best available scientific information and not to await scientific certainty prior to acting. The Council remains committed to utilizing adaptive management as one tool to continually improve the program's scientific foundation.**¹

2. Scientific Principles

As part of the scientific foundation, the program recognizes eight principles of general application. **The scientific principles are grounded in established scientific literature to provide a stable foundation for the Council's program. Although scientific knowledge will improve over time, modification of the principles should occur only after due scientific deliberation. The Council**

¹ As described in the *ISRP 2007 Retrospective Report* (ISRP 2008-4), project proposals should provide 1) an experimental design to identify whether biological objectives have been met by employing specific strategies; or 2) a decision tree that would be used to modify management based on updated scientific information.

1 **charges the Independent Scientific Advisory Board with the primary role in**
2 **reviewing and recommending modifications to the scientific principles.**

3
4 ~~It is intended that a~~All actions taken to implement this program **must** be
5 consistent with these **following** principles:-

6
7 ~~The scientific principles are grounded in established scientific literature to provide~~
8 ~~a stable foundation for the Council's program. A more detailed discussion of the~~
9 ~~implications of these principles, together with citations to the supporting~~
10 ~~references, is included in the Technical Appendix.~~

11
12 **Principle 1:: The abundance, productivity, and diversity of organisms are**
13 **integrally linked to the characteristics of their ecosystems.**

14 The physical and biological components of ecosystems together produce the
15 diversity, abundance and productivity of plant and animal species, including
16 humans. The combination of suitable habitats and necessary ecological functions
17 forms the ecosystem structure and conditions ~~needed~~**necessary** to provide the
18 desired abundance and productivity of specific species.

19
20 **Principle 2:: Ecosystems are dynamic, resilient, and develop over time.**

21 Although ecosystems have definable structures and characteristics, their behavior
22 is highly dynamic, changing in response to internal and external factors. The
23 system we see today is the product of its biological, human, and geological
24 legacy. Natural disturbance and change are normal ecological processes and are
25 essential to the structure and maintenance of habitats.

26
27 **Principle 3:: Biological systems operate on various spatial and time scales**
28 **that can be organized hierarchically.**

29 Ecosystems, landscapes, communities, and populations are usefully described as
30 hierarchies of nested components distinguished by their appropriate spatial and
31 time scales. Higher-level ecological patterns and processes constrain, and in turn
32 reflect, localized patterns and processes. There is no single, intrinsically correct
33 description of an ecosystem, only one that is useful to management or scientific
34 research. The hierarchy should clarify the higher-level constraints as well as the
35 localized mechanisms behind the problem.

36
37 **Principle 4:: Habitats develop, and are maintained, by physical and**
38 **biological processes.**

39 Habitats are created, altered, and maintained by processes that operate over a
40 range of scales. Locally observed conditions often reflect more expansive or non-
41 local processes and influences, including human actions. The presence of
42 essential habitat features created by these processes determines the abundance,
43 productivity, and diversity of species and communities. Habitat restoration
44 actions are most effective when undertaken with an understanding and
45 appreciation of the underlying habitat-forming processes.

1 | **Principle 5: Species play key roles in developing and maintaining ecological**
2 | **conditions.**

3 | Each species has one or more ecological functions that may be key to the
4 | development and maintenance of ecological conditions. Species, in effect, have a
5 | distinct job or occupation that is essential to the structure, sustainability, and
6 | productivity of the ecosystem over time. The existence, productivity, and
7 | abundance of specific species depend on these functions. In turn, loss of species
8 | and their functions lessens the ability of the ecosystem to withstand disturbance
9 | and change.

10 | **Principle 6: Biological diversity allows ecosystems to persist in the face of**
11 | **environmental variation.**

12 | The diversity of species, traits, and life histories within biological communities
13 | contributes to ecological stability in the face of disturbance and environmental
14 | change. Loss of species and their ecological functions can decrease ecological
15 | stability and resilience. It is not simply that more diversity is always good;
16 | introduction of non-native species, for example, can increase diversity but disrupt
17 | ecological structure. Diversity within a species presents a greater range of
18 | possible solutions to environmental variation and change. Maintaining the ability
19 | of the ecosystem to express its own species composition and diversity allows the
20 | system to remain productive in the face of environmental variation.

21 | **Principle 7: Ecological management is adaptive and experimental.**

22 | The dynamic nature, diversity, and complexity of ecological systems routinely
23 | disable attempts to command and control the environment. ~~Adaptive~~ **Adaptive**
24 | management -- —the use of management experiments to investigate biological
25 | problems and to test the efficacy of management programs -- —provides a model
26 | for experimental management of ecosystems. Experimental management does not
27 | mean passive “learning by doing,” but rather a directed program aimed at
28 | understanding key ecosystem dynamics and the impacts of human actions using
29 | scientific experimentation and inquiry.

30 | **Principle 8: Ecosystem function, habitat structure, and biological**
31 | **performance are affected by human actions.**

32 | As humans, we often view ourselves as separate and distinct from the natural
33 | world. However, we are integral parts of ecosystems. Our actions have a
34 | pervasive impact on the structure and function of ecosystems, while at the same
35 | time, our health and well-being are tied to ~~ecosystem~~ **these** conditions.

36 | ~~Our~~ **These** actions must be managed in ways that protect and restore ecosystem
37 | structures and conditions necessary for the survival and recovery of fish and
38 | wildlife in the basin. Success depends on the extent to which we choose to
39 | control our impacts so as to balance the various services potentially provided by
40 | the Columbia River Basin.
41 |
42 |
43 |

1
2 **C. Biological Objectives**
3

4 **1. Overarching Objectives Basin-Level Biological Objectives**

5 ~~The Northwest Power Act directs the Council to develop a program to~~
6 ~~“protect, mitigate, and enhance” fish and wildlife of the Columbia River and~~
7 ~~its tributaries, including related spawning grounds and habitat affected by~~
8 ~~the development and operation of the federal hydrosystem. In the vision, the~~
9 ~~Council has stated four overarching biological objectives for this program.~~
10 ~~They are:~~

11 ~~A Columbia River ecosystem that sustains an abundant, productive, and~~
12 ~~diverse community of fish and wildlife.~~

13 ~~Mitigation across the basin for the adverse effects to fish and wildlife caused~~
14 ~~by the development and operation of the hydrosystem.~~

15 ~~Sufficient populations of fish and wildlife for abundant opportunities for~~
16 ~~tribal trust and treaty right harvest and for non-tribal harvest.~~

17 ~~Recovery of the fish and wildlife affected by the development and operation~~
18 ~~of the hydrosystem that are listed under the Endangered Species Act.~~

19 ~~The Council recognizes that achieving these broad objectives is not the sole~~
20 ~~responsibility of this fish and wildlife program nor the Bonneville Power~~
21 ~~Administration. Complementary actions by other governmental agencies and~~
22 ~~funding sources, including Canadian entities where appropriate, as well as~~
23 ~~the support and participation of the citizens of the Northwest, will be needed~~
24 ~~for these objectives to be fully achieved. Consequently, the focus of the~~
25 ~~program is limited to fish and wildlife affected by the development,~~
26 ~~operation, and management of the hydrosystem.~~

27
28 Biological objectives describe **the** physical and biological changes needed to
29 achieve the ~~vision, based on the information we now have and thereby fulfill the~~
30 ~~vision. Biological objectives have two components: (1) biological performance,~~
31 ~~describing responses of populations to habitat conditions, described in terms of~~
32 ~~capacity, abundance, productivity and life history diversity, and (2) environmental~~
33 ~~characteristics, which describe the environmental conditions or changes sought to~~
34 ~~achieve the desired population characteristics. Where possible, biological~~
35 ~~objectives are intended to be empirically measurable and based on an explicit~~
36 ~~scientific rationale. Objectives at the basin level are more qualitative, but~~
37 ~~objectives should become increasingly quantitative and measurable at the~~
38 ~~province and subbasin levels. These basinwide objectives will help~~
39 ~~determine vision. Basin-level biological objectives are useful for determining~~
40 ~~the amount of basinwide change needed across the basin to fulfill the vision.~~

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18

~~They will also help determine, determining~~ the cost effectiveness of ~~program~~**various basinwide** strategies, and ~~provide a basis for monitoring, evaluation and accountability.~~**assessing overall program effectiveness.**

~~The Council will establish specific biological objectives at the province level and in subbasin plans identifying the changes needed in characteristics of the environment and target populations. The program provides the following biological objectives at the basin level.~~**Where possible, biological objectives should be empirically measurable and based on an explicit scientific rationale. Basinwide objectives are generally expressed in qualitative terms. At the province and subbasin levels, however, biological objectives should be expressed in quantitative and measurable terms.**

Biological objectives have two components: (1) biological performance, which describes population responses to habitat conditions (in terms of capacity, abundance, productivity, and life history diversity); and (2) environmental characteristics, which describe the environmental conditions necessary to achieve desired population characteristics.

1 **a. Objectives for Biological Performance**

2 The Council recognizes that significant losses of ~~anadromous fish, resident~~
3 ~~fish, and~~ wildlife, and their habitats have occurred ~~as a result of due to~~ the
4 development and operation of the ~~hydrosystem. To be consistent~~ **Federal**
5 **Columbia River Power System** ~~CRPS. Consistent~~ with the **Northwest**
6 Power Act, these losses establish the ~~underlying~~ basis for population
7 objectives ~~for the program as a whole. Collectively, specific biological~~
8 ~~objectives should represent what is considered to be mitigation for losses~~
9 ~~under the program.~~

10
11 **Anadromous Fish Losses**

12
13 ~~The Council recognizes that the scientific basis for biological objectives is~~
14 ~~not certain and will shift over time as our knowledge improves. Further,~~
15 ~~we expect to learn a great deal through the process of developing subbasin~~
16 ~~plans. The Council intends to review, and if necessary, revise these~~
17 ~~objectives in the course of adopting subbasin plans in a subsequent~~
18 ~~amendment process. On an interim basis, until subbasin plans identify~~
19 ~~actual targets, the Council adopts the following regional objectives for~~
20 ~~anadromous fish:~~

21
22 **Mitigating for losses** ~~for the loss~~ of anadromous fish caused by the
23 development and operation of the hydrosystem is at the core of the
24 Council’s program. The “Compilation of Salmon and Steelhead
25 Losses in the Columbia River Basin” and the “Numerical Estimates of
26 Hydropower-related Losses” (included in the Appendix), are a
27 starting place for understanding the magnitude of these losses.

28
29 **The biological objectives at the basinwide level describe the broad**
30 **changes that need to occur in the environment and the resulting**
31 **changes needed in biological performance to address these losses. The**
32 **following objectives address anadromous fish losses::**

- 33
- 34 • Halt declining trends in **Columbia River Basin** salmon and
35 steelhead populations, **especially those that originate** above
36 Bonneville Dam ~~by 2005. Obtain the information necessary to begin.~~
37 **Significantly improve the smolt-to-adult survival rates (SARs) for**
38 **Columbia River Basin salmon and steelhead, resulting in**
39 **productivity well into the range of positive population**
40 **replacement. Continue** ~~Begin~~ restoring the characteristics of healthy
41 lamprey populations.
 - 42
43 • Restore the widest possible set of healthy, naturally reproducing **and**
44 **sustaining** populations of salmon and steelhead in each relevant
45 **ecological province.** ~~by 2012. Healthy populations are defined as~~

1 ~~having an 80 percent probability of maintaining themselves for 200~~
2 ~~years at a level that can support harvest rates of at least 30 percent.~~

- 3
4 • **Significantly increase the total adult salmon and steelhead runs in the**
5 **Columbia River Basin, especially those that originate** above
6 Bonneville Dam, ~~by 2025 to an average of 5 million annually~~ in a
7 manner that supports tribal and non-tribal harvest. **Efforts must be**
8 **consistent with achieving recovery of ESA-listed populations and**
9 **preventing additional ESA listings of species.** Within 100 years,
10 achieve population characteristics that, while fluctuating due to natural
11 variability, represent on average full mitigation for losses of
12 anadromous fish.
13
14 • **Restore lamprey passage and habitat in the mainstem and in**
15 **tributaries that historically supported spawning lamprey**
16 **populations. Attain self-sustaining and harvestable populations of**
17 **lamprey throughout their historical range. Mitigate for lost**
18 **lamprey production in areas where restoration of habitat or**
19 **passage is not feasible.**

20
21 **Fish and wildlife agencies and tribes recommended that the program**
22 **continue to include a set of quantitative goals and timelines related to**
23 **these objectives. These include, among others, increasing total adult**
24 **salmon and steelhead runs to an average of 5 million annually by 2025**
25 **in a manner that emphasizes the populations that originate above**
26 **Bonneville Dam and supports tribal and non-tribal harvest, and**
27 **achieving smolt-to-adult survival rates (SARs) in the 2-6 percent**
28 **range (minimum 2 percent; average 4 percent) for listed Snake River**
29 **and upper Columbia salmon and steelhead.**

30
31 **Within two years of adopting the amended program, the Council will**
32 **work with the fish and wildlife agencies, tribes, and others to initiate a**
33 **process specifically aimed at assessing the value for the program of**
34 **quantitative biological objectives at the basinwide level (or at any level**
35 **above the subbasin and population level) and, if determined to be**
36 **useful, develop a scientifically rigorous set of such quantitative**
37 **objectives.**

38 39 40 **Substitution for Anadromous Fish Losses**

41
42 Where some anadromous fish losses occur in blocked areas, mitigation for
43 these losses must also occur in these blocked areas pursuant to the
44 program's **"Resident Fish Substitution Policy"**. **The "Compilation of**
45 **Salmon and Steelhead Losses in the Columbia River Basin"** and the
46 **"Numerical Estimates of Hydropower-related Losses"** adopted in the

1 Council's 1987 fish and wildlife program (included in the Appendix)
2 are the starting points for the Council's approach regarding
3 substitution.
4

5
6 The following principles address anadromous fish losses and
7 mitigation requirements caused by development and operation of
8 hydroelectric facilities in all blocked areas:
9

- 10 • Investigate reintroduction of anadromous fish into blocked
11 areas, where feasible.
- 12 • Restore and increase the abundance of native resident fish
13 species throughout their historic ranges when original habitat
14 conditions exist or can be feasibly restored or improved.
- 15 • Develop and increase opportunities for consumptive and non-
16 consumptive resident fisheries for native, introduced, wild, and
17 hatchery-reared stocks that are compatible with the continued
18 persistence of native resident fish species and their restoration
19 to near their historic abundance.
- 20 • When full mitigation by improving the abundance of native
21 fish species is not feasible, manage non-native fish to maximize
22 use of available existing and improved habitats to provide a
23 subsistence and sport fishing resource, without adversely
24 affecting native fish populations.

25
26
27
28 ~~•Part of the anadromous fish losses has occurred in the blocked areas.
29 A corresponding part of the mitigation for these losses must occur
30 in those areas. The program has a "Resident Fish Substitution
31 Policy" for areas in which anadromous fish have been extirpated.
32 Restore native resident fish species (subspecies, stocks and
33 populations) to near historic abundance throughout their historic
34 ranges where original habitat conditions exist and where habitats
35 can be feasibly restored.~~

36 ☐

37 ~~•Take action to reintroduce anadromous fish into blocked areas, where
38 feasible.~~

39
40 ~~•Administer and increase opportunities for consumptive and non-
41 consumptive resident fisheries for native, introduced, wild, and
42 hatchery-reared stocks that are compatible with the continued
43 persistence of native resident fish species and their restoration to
44 near historic abundance (includes intensive fisheries within closed
45 or isolated systems).~~

1 **Resident Fish Losses**

2
3 •The development and operation of the hydrosystem has ~~also~~ resulted in
4 losses of ~~numbers and diversity of~~ native resident fish, **and resident fish**
5 **diversity for species** such as bull trout, cutthroat trout, kokanee, white
6 sturgeon and other species. The following objectives address resident fish
7 losses:

- 8
- 9 • ~~Complete~~ **Where feasible, complete the basinwide** assessments of
10 resident fish losses ~~throughout the basin~~ resulting from the
11 **development and operation of the** hydrosystem, ~~expressed in~~
12 ~~terms of the various critical population characteristics of key~~
13 ~~resident fish species~~. **As these are available, the Council will**
14 **consider adopting the loss assessments into the pProgram.**
 - 15 • Maintain and restore healthy ecosystems and watersheds;
16 ~~that which~~ preserve functional links among ecosystem elements to
17 ensure the continued persistence, health, and diversity of all
18 species including game fish species, non-game fish species, and
19 other organisms.
 - 20
 - 21 • Protect and expand habitat and ecosystem functions ~~as the means in~~
22 **order** to ~~significantly~~ increase the abundance, productivity, and
23 life history diversity of resident fish at least to the extent that
24 ~~they~~ **resident fish** have been affected by the development and
25 operation of the hydrosystem.
 - 26
 - 27 • Achieve population characteristics of ~~these~~ **resident fish** species
28 within 100 years that, ~~while fluctuating due to natural variability,~~
29 represent, on average, full mitigation for losses of resident fish.
 - 30
 - 31

32 **Wildlife Losses**

33
34 Development and operation of the hydrosystem ~~also~~ resulted in wildlife
35 losses through construction of **dams** and inundation of **habitat losses**,
36 direct operational losses, ~~or through and~~ secondary losses. The program
37 ~~has included~~ **includes** measures and ~~implemented~~ **implements** projects to
38 ~~obtain~~ **acquire** and protect habitat units ~~in~~ **as** mitigation for ~~these calculated~~
39 construction/ **and** inundation losses. ~~Operational and secondary losses~~
40 ~~have not been estimated or addressed~~. The program ~~includes~~ **maintains** a
41 commitment to mitigate for ~~these~~ **operational and secondary** losses
42 ~~that which~~ **have not yet been estimated or addressed**. The following
43 objectives address ~~resident fish~~ **wildlife** losses more specifically: ~~More~~
44 ~~specific wildlife objectives are~~ **as follows**:
45

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20

- ~~Quantify wildlife~~ **Complete the mitigation to address the assessed losses caused by the construction, of the hydrosystem facilities and the resulting inundation, and of land. - As appropriate, complete wildlife loss assessments for losses caused by** operation of the hydropower projects.
- Develop and implement habitat acquisition and enhancement projects to fully mitigate for identified losses.
- Coordinate ~~mitigation~~ **habitat restoration and acquisition** activities throughout the basin ~~and~~ with fish mitigation and restoration efforts, ~~specifically by coordinating habitat restoration and acquisition with aquatic habitats~~ to promote ~~connectivity of~~ terrestrial and aquatic ~~areas~~ **area connectivity**.
- Maintain existing and created habitat values.
- Monitor and evaluate habitat and species responses to mitigation actions.

1 **b. Objectives for Environmental Characteristics**

2 Basin--level environmental characteristics describe the kinds of
3 **environmental** changes ~~that are~~ needed across the Columbia River Basin
4 to achieve the ~~changes in basinwide~~ biological performance ~~described~~
5 ~~earlier. Again, the intent is to achieve the vision and allow for mitigation~~
6 ~~under the Power Act for the fish and wildlife losses resulting from the~~
7 ~~development and operation of the hydrosystem. The Council is including~~
8 ~~in the Appendix of this program a provisional set of environmental~~
9 ~~characteristic objectives for the basin level.~~ The following objectives
10 **address environmental characteristics:**

11
12 ~~□ The Council directs the Independent Scientific Advisory Board to~~
13 ~~review the basin level environmental characteristics in the Appendix~~
14 ~~by June 2001. The Independent Scientific Advisory Board should~~
15 ~~report to the Council on the scientific soundness and basinwide~~
16 ~~applicability of the environmental characteristics, as well as their~~
17 ~~utility for further defining biological objectives at the province and~~
18 ~~subbasin levels. As part of its review, the Independent Scientific~~
19 ~~Advisory Board should consider and report to the Council on the~~
20 ~~applicability of these objectives in the most altered areas of the basin,~~
21 ~~the blocked areas~~

- 22
23 • **Identify and protect habitat areas and ecological functions that are**
24 **relatively productive for spawning, resting, rearing, and migrating**
25 **salmon and steelhead in the mainstem. Restore and enhance**
26 **habitat areas that connect to the productive areas to support**
27 **expansion of productive populations and to connect weaker and**
28 **stronger populations so as to restore more natural population**
29 **structures.**
- 30
31 • ~~The Council will make the Independent Scientific Advisory Board's~~
32 ~~report publicly available and seek views and comment from interested~~
33 ~~parties. The Council will consider the report of the Independent~~
34 ~~Scientific Advisory Board and the views and comments of others on~~
35 ~~the report, and will confirm or revise these basin level objectives for~~
36 ~~environmental characteristics for purposes of providing guidance for~~
37 ~~subbasin level planning and further program amendments.~~ **Protect,**
38 **enhance, restore, and connect freshwater habitat in the mainstem**
39 **for the life history stages of naturally spawning anadromous and**
40 **resident salmonids.**
- 41
42 • **Protect and enhance ecological connectivity between aquatic areas,**
43 **riparian zones, floodplains, and uplands. Enhance the connections**
44 **between rivers and their floodplains, side channels, and riparian**
45 **zones.**

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

- **Manage mainstem riparian areas to protect aquatic conditions and form a transition to floodplain terrestrial areas and side channels.**
 - **Identify, protect, enhance, and restore the functions of alluvial river reaches. Where feasible, reconnect protected and enhanced tributary habitats to protected and enhanced habitats, especially in the area of productive populations.**
- **Allow for biological diversity to increase among and within populations and species to increase ecological resilience to environmental variability.**
 - **Expand the complexity and range of habitats to allow for greater life history and species diversity.**
 - **Manage human activities, to minimize artificial selection or limitation of life history traits.**
 - **Where feasible, support patterns of water flow that more closely approximate natural hydrographic patterns in terms of quantity, quality, and fluctuation. Ensure that any changes in water management are premised upon, and proportionate to, scientifically demonstrated fish and wildlife benefits.**
 - **Frame habitat restoration in the context of measured trends in water quantity and quality.**
 - **Allow for seasonal fluctuations in flow, including floods. Reduce large and rapid short-term fluctuations.**
 - **Increase the correspondence between water temperatures and the naturally occurring regimes of temperatures throughout the basin. To the extent possible, use stored water to manage water temperatures downstream from ~~below the~~ storage reservoirs where temperature benefits from releases can be shown to provide improved fish survival.**
- **Identify, protect, enhance, restore, and connect ecosystem functions in the Columbia River estuary and nearshore ocean discharge plume as affected by actions within the Columbia River mainstem. Evaluate flow regulation and changes to estuary-area habitat and biological diversity to better understand the relationship between estuary ecology and near-shore plume characteristics and the productivity, abundance, and diversity of salmon and steelhead populations.**

1 **2. Further Development of Biological Objectives at the Basin Level**

2
3 Biological objectives, comprising both biological performance and environmental
4 characteristic standards, will be established at the province level and subbasin
5 level (in subbasin plans) in subsequent program amendments. However, the
6 efforts at assessment and planning that will precede the formal adoption of
7 province and subbasin level biological objectives may further inform the basin
8 level objectives adopted here. This is possible in two primary ways. First,
9 assessment and planning at these levels should test the validity of the general
10 basin level biological objectives, as previously described. Second, assessment and
11 planning at these levels may identify more specific, quantified biological
12 objectives for the program as a whole. Examples might include abundance and
13 performance objectives for fish populations that transcend more than one
14 province, specific programwide objectives for improvement in certain habitat
15 types, and specific objectives for water management and coordinated operation of
16 the hydrosystem to benefit fish and wildlife. **The program contains qualitative
17 objectives for desired change in biological performance and environmental
18 characteristics. It also includes quantitative objectives relating to wildlife
19 mitigation in the construction and inundation loss assessments, and a
20 significant set of quantitative objectives for anadromous and resident fish at
21 the subbasin level.**

22
23 ~~More specific basinwide objectives could help determine the amount of change
24 needed across the basin to fulfill the vision. They will also help determine the
25 cost-effectiveness of program strategies and provide a basis for monitoring,
26 evaluation, and accountability. These more specific objectives will be considered
27 as guidance for subbasin planning, and for adoption when the Council considers
28 adoption of province level biological objectives and subbasin plans.~~

29
30 **The Council will work with the federal and state fish and wildlife agencies
31 and tribes, Bonneville, and others before the next program amendment in a
32 process specifically aimed at assessing the value for the program of
33 quantitative biological objectives at the basinwide level, or at any level above
34 the subbasin and population level. If determined to be useful in certain
35 categories, the Council will work with these partners to develop a set of
36 quantitative objectives for amendment into the program.**

37
38 **4. Significance of Objectives and Strategies**

39
40 ~~These objectives and the strategies that follow are to be used as guidance for
41 developing province and subbasin plans, as the basis for development of more
42 specific objectives, and as a basis for Council recommendations to the Bonneville
43 Power Administration regarding project funding. Proposed measures will be
44 evaluated for consistency with these objectives and strategies. A primary function
45 of the monitoring and evaluation components of this program is to measure
46 progress toward achieving these objectives.~~

1
2
3



~~All province and subbasin plans must be consistent with these objectives.~~

1 | **D. Basinwide Strategies**

2 |
3 | ~~Strategies~~ **Basinwide strategies** are plans of action to accomplish the **basinwide**
4 | biological objectives. ~~In developing strategies, the program takes into account not only~~
5 | ~~the desired outcomes, but also the physical and biological realities expressed in the~~
6 | ~~scientific foundation.~~ **Strategies at the basin level consist of programmatic guidelines**
7 | **for planning and implementation at the subbasin and province level and include**
8 | **specific measures -that transcend specific subbasins and provinces, such as research,**
9 | **monitoring, and evaluation. Strategies to protect, mitigate, and enhance fish and**
10 | **wildlife should consider current as well as future environmental conditions.**

11 |
12 | **Implementation of strategies at all program levels will be more effective if developed**
13 | **further into coordinated, multi-year implementation plans with a sufficient funding**
14 | **commitment and clear obligations for on-going performance review and reporting.**
15 | **In 2008, Bonneville and the other federal agencies** ~~recently~~ **made such**
16 | **implementation commitments to certain elements of the pProgram, as described in**
17 | **the program’s Introduction and Implementation Provisions. The Council will work**
18 | **with Bonneville and other program partners to develop multi-year implementation**
19 | **plans in areas lacking funding commitments. The Council will work with**
20 | **Bonneville to ensure reasonable implementation of all multi-year plans.**

21 |
22 | ~~This program anticipates that detailed plans, consistent with the biological objectives,~~
23 | ~~will be developed locally for each of the more than 50 subbasins in the Columbia River~~
24 | ~~Basin. Because most of the specific actions will be addressed at the province and~~
25 | ~~subbasin levels, most of the strategies will be developed there. At the subbasin level,~~
26 | ~~“strategies” will include the particular measures to be implemented within a given~~
27 | ~~subbasin.~~

1 | **1. Habitat Strategies**

2 |
3 | **Primary strategy:** Identify the current condition and biological potential of the
4 | habitat, and then protect or restore it to the extent described in the
5 | [biological objectives section](#).

6 |
7 | This program relies heavily on protection of, and improvements to, inland habitat
8 | as the most effective means of restoring and sustaining fish and wildlife
9 | populations. However, it also recognizes that depending on the condition of the
10 | habitat and the target species, certain categories of mitigation investments are
11 | likely to be more effective than others. Thus, an important function of this
12 | strategy is to direct investments to their most productive applications.

13 |
14 | Changes in the hydrosystem are unlikely within the next few years to fully
15 | mitigate impacts to fish and wildlife. However, the Northwest Power Act allows
16 | off-site mitigation for fish and wildlife populations affected by the hydrosystem.
17 | Because some of the greatest opportunities for improvement lie outside the
18 | immediate area of the hydrosystem -- —in the tributaries and subbasins off the
19 | mainstem of the Columbia and Snake Rivers, [and in the lower Columbia River](#)
20 | [and estuary](#) -- —this program seeks habitat improvements outside the
21 | hydrosystem as a means of offsetting some of the impacts of the hydrosystem.

22 |
23 | For example, passage through the hydrosystem causes ~~injury loss~~ to [spring](#)
24 | [chinook salmon, steelhead, lamprey, and some resident fish](#). ~~While~~
25 | ~~measures at the dams can and should be taken to reduce this injury loss, as~~
26 | ~~long as the dams exist they will continue to cause some of this injury loss.~~ As an
27 | offset [for hydrosystem-caused losses](#), the program may **also** call for
28 | improvements in spawning and rearing habitats in tributaries ~~where there are no~~
29 | [dams present, the lower river, and estuary](#). By restoring these habitats, which
30 | were not damaged by the hydrosystem, the program helps compensate for the
31 | existence of the hydrosystem.

32 |
33 | Habitat considerations extend beyond the tributaries, however. Historically, the
34 | mainstem Columbia and Snake rivers were among the most productive spawning
35 | and rearing habitats for salmonids and provided essential resting and feeding
36 | habitat for mainstem resident and migrating fish. Protection and restoration of
37 | mainstem habitat conditions must be a critical piece of this habitat-based program.

38 |
39 | ~~As explained further in other parts of this program, a specific plan will be~~
40 | [Subbasin plans have been](#) developed for [most each](#) of the subbasins in the
41 | Columbia River Basin, [including](#) sections of the mainstem Columbia and Snake
42 | rivers [and the estuary](#). ~~S, as well as objectives and strategies for each~~
43 | ~~ecological province. Each s~~Subbasin plans [include will begin with an assessment](#)
44 | [of assessments of ed](#) the current physical and biological conditions and [also](#)
45 | [identify, identified factors that limit the productivity and capacity of focal](#)

1 | ~~species in priority reaches. , developed in~~ **Management plans in the subbasin**
2 | ~~plans respond to and then address the~~ **habitat** improvements that are needed.

3 |
4 | ~~The Council believes Tthere is-is a wide~~ variety of potentially successful
5 | approaches that may be used to improve and maintain habitat. **The Council**
6 | **believes that the decision of which approach to use is best made at the local,**
7 | **site-specific level,** ~~and also believes that the choice of which approach to use is~~
8 | ~~best left to a local, site-specific decision,~~ subject to scientific review. However,
9 | all subbasin plans, and measures within those plans, should be consistent with the
10 | vision and biological objectives **of the program**, and the following strategies:

11 | **a. Build from Strength**

12 | Efforts to improve the status of fish and wildlife populations in the
13 | basin should protect habitat that supports existing populations that
14 | are relatively healthy and productive. **Adjacent habitats should**
15 | **be expanded if they have been historically productive or have a**
16 | **likelihood of sustaining healthy populations by reconnecting or**
17 | **improving habitat.** In a similar manner, this strategy applies to
18 | the restoration of weak stocks: the restoration should focus first on
19 | the habitat where portions of **the weak populations** are doing
20 | relatively well and then extend to adjacent habitats.

21 | **Strongholds**

22 | **A salmon, steelhead or resident fish stronghold refers to a**
23 | **subbasin, watershed or other defined spatial area where**
24 | **populations are stronger and genetically more diverse than**
25 | **other areas. The Council will work with regional entities to**
26 | **establish criteria for identification of stronghold areas within**
27 | **the Columbia River Basin. The Council may consider**
28 | **additional funding in these areas to provide further protection**
29 | **and to reduce impacts of limiting factors. Strongholds will**
30 | **emphasize the preservation and restoration of habitat for wild**
31 | **fish**

32 |
33 |
34 |
35 | **b. Restore Ecosystems, Not Just Single Species**

36 | Increasing the abundance of single populations may not, by itself, result in
37 | long-term recovery. Restoration efforts must focus on restoring habitats
38 | and developing ecosystem conditions and functions that will allow for
39 | expanding and maintaining ~~a diversity~~ **diversity** within, and among,
40 | species. **This will help** ~~in order to~~ sustain a system of robust populations
41 | in the face of environmental variation.
42 |

1 **c. Use Native Species Wherever Feasible**

2 Even in degraded or altered environments, native species in native habitats
3 provide the best starting point and direction for needed biological
4 conditions in most cases. Where a species native to that particular habitat
5 cannot be restored, then another species native to the Columbia River
6 Basin should be used. Any proposal to produce or release non-native
7 species must overcome this strong presumption in favor of native species
8 and habitats and be designed to avoid adverse impacts on native species.²

9 **Substitution**

10 ~~Mitigation in areas blocked to salmon and steelhead by the~~
11 ~~development and operation of the hydropower system is appropriate,~~
12 ~~and flexibility in approach is needed to develop a program that~~
13 ~~provides resident fish substitutions for lost salmon and steelhead~~
14 ~~where in-kind mitigation cannot occur. The “Compilation of Salmon~~
15 ~~and Steelhead Losses in the Columbia River Basin” and the~~
16 ~~“Numerical Estimates of Hydropower-related Losses” adopted in~~
17 ~~Appendices D and E of the 1987 program, and contained in the~~
18 ~~Appendix to this program together, are the starting place for the~~
19 ~~Council’s approach regarding substitution.~~

20 **Include the Estuary**

21 ~~The estuary is an important ecological feature that is negatively~~
22 ~~affected by upriver management actions and local habitat change.~~
23 ~~While less is known about the potential for improvement in the~~
24 ~~estuary than is known about the potential for improvement in most~~
25 ~~other parts of the Columbia River Basin, there are indications that~~
26 ~~substantial improvements are possible and that these improvements~~
27 ~~may benefit most of the anadromous fish populations. The estuary~~
28 ~~will be included as one of the planning units for this program. (The~~
29 ~~freshwater plume and the ocean itself are also important habitats for~~
30 ~~salmon and are addressed in the Ocean Conditions section of this~~
31 ~~program.)~~

32 **d. Address Transboundary Species**

33 Because about 15 percent of the Columbia River Basin is in British
34 Columbia, including the headwaters of the Columbia and several of its key
35 tributaries, ecosystem restoration efforts should address transboundary
36 stocks of fish and wildlife and transboundary habitats. Where mitigation
37 measures are designed to benefit both ~~American~~U.S. and Canadian fish
38 and wildlife populations, ~~American~~U.S. ratepayer funding should be in
39 proportion to anticipated benefits to the ~~American~~ U.S. populations.

² Further detail on matters relating to non-native species and to the use of native and non-native species in resident fish substitution may be found in section 2 below.

1 e. Protected Areas (Future Hydroelectric Development and
2 Licensing)

3 The Council has adopted a set of standards for the Federal Energy
4 Regulatory Commission, ~~t~~The Bonneville Power Administration, and
5 other federal agencies to apply to the development and licensing of
6 new hydroelectric facilities in the Columbia River Basin. As part of
7 this effort, the Council designated certain river reaches in the basin as
8 “protected areas.” The Council found that new hydroelectric
9 development in a designated protected area would have unacceptable
10 risks of loss to fish and wildlife species of concern, their productive
11 capacity, or their habitat.

12
13 The Council ~~expects~~ ~~calls on~~ the Federal Energy Regulatory
14 Commission, in the exercise of its licensing authority under the
15 Federal Power Act, to take the Council’s protected areas decision into
16 account to the fullest extent practicable. The Commission should
17 implement the Council’s decision in the Commission’s licensing and
18 exemption proceedings unless the Commission’s legal responsibilities
19 *require* otherwise. The Council also ~~expects~~ ~~calls on~~ Bonneville not to
20 acquire power from or provide transmission support for a new
21 hydroelectric development in a manner inconsistent with the
22 Council’s designation of protected areas. The standards, and the
23 conditions relating to that protection, are identified in the Future
24 Hydroelectric Development section of the Appendix to this program.

25 f. Habitat Protection and Improvement Activities to Address
26 Biological Objectives

27 Habitat work is intended to be consistent with the program’s
28 biological objectives and also with measures contained in subbasin
29 plans. The most common habitat protection and improvement
30 activities implemented under the program consist of:

- 31
- 32 • ~~R~~emoval of passage barriers
- 33 • ~~D~~iversion screening
- 34 • ~~R~~iparian habitat protections and improvements (fencing,
35 vegetation planting, erosion control, best land management
36 practices, easements, and other acquisitions) largely intended
37 to improve water quality, especially with regards to
38 temperature and sediments
- 39 • ~~W~~ater transactions and conservation activities to increase the
40 amount, timing, and duration of instream flows
- 41 • ~~F~~loodplain reconnections and passive and active
42 improvements in channel structure and geomorphology and
43 the re-establishment of natural river processes
- 44 • ~~A~~acquisitions of and enhancements to terrestrial uplands for
45 wildlife habitat

1
2 **These are likely to continue as the core of the program’s habitat-**
3 **improvement activities in the immediate future. As the program**
4 **addresses instream flow, temperature, and other water-quality**
5 **problems through riparian protections and water acquisitions, finding**
6 **ways to relax channel constraints and allow rivers to regain more**
7 **natural floodplain connections may be both the greatest habitat need**
8 **and the biggest challenge in the coming decades.**

9 **g. Emerging Habitat Issues**

10 **In preparing this program, the Council received ~~Recent~~**
11 **recommendations regarding ~~emphasized~~ a set of emerging issues only**
12 **briefly addressed ~~lightly dealt with~~ in the existing subbasin plans, if**
13 **~~considered~~ at all. These include:**

- 14
- 15 • **Increased concern over the adverse effect of non-native aquatic**
16 **and terrestrial species in altered or improving habitats. This**
17 **issue is addressed below, in a separate strategy.**
- 18
- 19 • **The need to assess and, where necessary, respond to the**
20 **impacts of climate change that could threaten the program’s**
21 **past and on-going investments in habitat improvements. From**
22 **this point on, planning and implementation should include**
23 **explicit consideration of the possible effects of climate change**
24 **on the focal habitats and populations. It may be that climate**
25 **change is not likely to change the suite of habitat actions that**
26 **the program implements, but it may lead to a need to re-**
27 **evaluate place and intensity. The Council is already investing**
28 **in a set of studies and assessment methods to prepare the tools**
29 **for this task, and ~~requests~~ ~~calls on the~~ federal agencies and**
30 **others to do the same.**
- 31
- 32 • **Toxic contaminants in the rivers and streams of the Northwest**
33 **may be having adverse effects on Columbia River Basin fish**
34 **and wildlife mitigation and recovery. If so, identifying and**
35 **reducing these toxic contaminants may be important for the**
36 **success of the program. The Council encourages federal ~~action~~**
37 **~~action~~ agencies to collaborate on investigation of contaminant**
38 **source identification and long-term monitoring of priority**
39 **toxic contaminants with federal, regional, and state agencies to**
40 **better understand how contaminants are taken up by different**
41 **fish and wildlife species. The Council specifically encourages**
42 **the long-term monitoring of known toxic contaminants**
43 **including DDT, PCBs, mercury, PBDEs, PAHs, arsenic,**
44 **dioxins/furans, lead, organophosphate insecticides and**
45 **herbicides, copper, and estrogen compounds to establish trends**

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

in contaminant levels and locations. The results of these investigations and monitoring will assist in fish recovery efforts and will inform the Council’s subbasin planning and habitat restoration efforts.

Strategies to address these emerging concerns are not likely to constitute a significant part of the program’s implemented habitat activities, and the Council’s program will be but one small part of the region’s response to these problems. Even so, assessing the threat to the fish and wildlife important to the program and responding appropriately will be an important part of the program.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23

2. Non-Native Species Strategies

Non-native invasions imperil native species in the Pacific Northwest’s ecosystems through predation, competition for food, interbreeding, disease transmission, food web disruption, and physical habitat alteration. Specific measures addressing the effects of non-native species on native fish, wildlife, and habitat can be found in the program’s subbasin and mainstem plans along with wildlife management plans.

While the program recommends resident fish substitutions for lost salmon and steelhead where in-kind mitigation cannot occur, the program also includes a resident fish substitution strategy. The resident fish substitution strategy describes conditions under which non-native fish management should occur and requires an environmental-risk assessment³ prior to introduction or enhancement of non-native species.

The Council supports actions that suppress non-native populations that directly or indirectly adversely affect juvenile and adult salmonids. For example, the Council urges state agencies to modify fishing regulations or harvest limits as appropriate, to reduce predation on native populations.

³ The risk assessment process is described in Council Document ISAB 2008-4, posted at www.nwcouncil.org/fw/ISAB.

3. Artificial Production Strategies

Primary strategies: Artificial production can be used under the following proper conditions: ~~to~~ 1) **in an integrated manner to** complement habitat improvements by supplementing native fish populations up to the sustainable carrying capacity of the habitat with fish that are as similar as possible, in genetics and behavior, to wild native fish; ~~and~~ 2) **in a segregated manner to maintain the genetic integrity of the local populations in order to expand natural production while supporting harvest of artificially produced stocks; or 3) to** replace lost salmon and steelhead in blocked areas.

A critical issue ~~that facing~~ the region ~~faces on artificial production~~ is whether artificial production activities can play a role in providing significant harvest opportunities throughout the basin while also ~~acting to protect and even rebuild~~ **protecting and rebuilding** naturally spawning populations. Artificial production must be used in a manner consistent with ecologically based scientific principles for fish recovery. Fish raised in hatcheries for harvest should have a minimal impact on ~~fish that spawn~~ **spawning fish**. Fish reared ~~in hatcheries or by other artificial means~~ for the purpose of supplementing the recovery of a wild population should clearly benefit that population.

The science on this issue is far from settled. **The Council will consider standards for maintaining both integrated and segregated hatchery programs, and standards for the proportion of wild fish returning to spawn that are necessary to maintain the genetic integrity of local populations, based on the recommendations from the Hatchery Scientific Review Group, due in December, 2008.**

Improperly run, artificial production programs can ~~do~~ damage ~~to~~ wild fish runs. However, when fish runs fall to extremely low levels, artificial production may be the only way to keep enough of ~~those~~ populations alive in the short term so that ~~they~~ have a chance of recovering in the long term. What is not so clear is the extent to which artificially ~~produced~~ fish can be mixed with a wild population in a way that sustains and rebuilds the wild population.

The Council has weighed these uncertainties and, recognizing that inaction also ~~holds~~ **poses** a large risk, has adopted the **following** strategies ~~in this section. These strategies, which are summarized in the Biological Objectives table on page 15, are intended to address the limitations and opportunities of specific habitat conditions.~~:

a. Implementation of Recommendations from Artificial Production Review

~~In 2004, the~~ The Council and the region's fish and wildlife managers ~~recently~~ completed a multiyear review of artificial production in the

1 Columbia River Basin. This review established a set of standards to be
2 applied in all artificial production programs in the Columbia River Basin;
3 ~~and this.~~ **This** program incorporates ~~those~~ standards as minimum
4 standards for all artificial production projects. ~~The full description of~~
5 ~~these standards is in the Artificial Production Review section of the~~
6 ~~Appendix. In summary, the policies are~~ **The standards can be**
7 **summarized as follows:**
8

- 9 • The purpose and use of artificial production must be considered in
10 the context of the ecological environment in which it will be used.
11
- 12 • Artificial production must be implemented within an experimental,
13 adaptive–management design that includes an aggressive program
14 to evaluate the risks and benefits and address scientific
15 uncertainties.
16
- 17 • Hatcheries must be operated in a manner that recognizes that they
18 exist within ecological systems whose behavior is constrained by
19 larger-scale basin, regional and global factors.
20
- 21 • A diversity of life history types and species needs to be maintained
22 in order to sustain a system of populations in the face of
23 environmental variation.
24
- 25 • Naturally selected populations should provide the model for
26 successful artificially reared populations, in regard to population
27 structure, mating protocol, behavior, growth, morphology, nutrient
28 cycling, and other biological characteristics.
29
- 30 • The entities authorizing or managing an artificial production
31 facility or program should explicitly identify whether the artificial
32 propagation product is intended for the purpose of augmentation,
33 mitigation, restoration, preservation, research, or some
34 combination of those purposes for each population of fish
35 addressed.
36
- 37 • Decisions on the use of the artificial production tool need to be
38 made in the context of deciding on fish and wildlife goals,
39 objectives, and strategies at the subbasin and province levels.
40
- 41 • Appropriate risk management needs to be maintained in using the
42 tool of artificial propagation.
43
- 44 • Production for harvest is a legitimate management objective of
45 artificial production, but to minimize adverse impacts on natural
46 populations associated with harvest management of artificially

1 produced populations, harvest rates and practices must be dictated
2 by the requirements to sustain naturally spawning populations.

- 3
4 • Federal and other legal mandates and obligations for fish
5 protection, mitigation, and enhancement must be fully addressed.
6

7 **b. Wild Salmon ~~Refuges~~Protection**

8 Where the critical habitat is largely intact, artificial production is not
9 currently occurring, and the fish population has good potential, ~~then~~ no
10 artificial production should be used. Those populations and their
11 associated spawning and early rearing habitat should be preserved and
12 protected.

13 **c. Harvest Hatcheries**

14 Hatcheries intended solely to produce fish for harvest may be used to
15 create a replacement for ~~the~~ lost or diminished harvest. ~~The~~
16 ~~hatchery~~ Hatcheries must be located and operated in a manner that does
17 not lead to adverse effects on other stocks through excessive straying or
18 excessive take of weak stocks in a mixed-stock fishery.

19 **d. Restoration**

20 Except for **areas protected for** wild salmon ~~refuges~~ or areas where the
21 habitat is blocked or eliminated, supplementation of natural runs with
22 artificially produced fish may be used for the purpose of rebuilding the
23 natural runs. **However, the** ~~although the~~ decision of whether to employ
24 supplementation for this purpose is one that should be made locally,
25 **consistent with** ~~as part of~~ the subbasin plan. The ~~object~~ **purpose** of such
26 supplementation is to restore and maintain healthy fish populations, with
27 sufficient genetic and life history diversity to ensure that eventually, after
28 appropriate habitat improvements, they will become self-sustaining.

29 **e. Experimental Approach**

30 In recognition of the risk and uncertainty associated with artificial
31 production, each artificial production activity must be approached
32 experimentally with a plan detailing the purpose and method of operation,
33 the relationship to other elements of the subbasin plan, including
34 associated habitat and other projects within the subbasin plan, specific
35 measurable objectives for the activity, and a regular cycle of evaluation
36 and reporting of results. This approach will allow the region to address
37 the remaining uncertainties on a case-by-case basis and quickly make
38 adjustments in artificial production activities where warranted.

1 **Initial Review**

2 ~~Over the next three years, every artificial production program and~~
3 ~~facility in the basin, federal and non-federal, should undergo a review~~
4 ~~to determine its consistency with these strategies, scientific principles,~~
5 ~~and policies. These evaluations will be a prerequisite for seeking~~
6 ~~continued funding and/or adopting a subbasin plan into the program~~
7 ~~in the next phase of the amendment process. These evaluations must~~
8 ~~be guided in part by basin, province level and subbasin level visions,~~
9 ~~goals and objectives, and by overarching policies for artificial~~
10 ~~production based on the policies stated earlier.~~

11 **Annual Reporting and Five-year Review**

12 ~~After five years, the Council, other regional decision-makers and~~
13 ~~Congress should assess whether existing review, funding and planning~~
14 ~~processes are successful in implementing needed reforms in artificial~~
15 ~~production practices. In the interim, the entities responsible for~~
16 ~~artificial production programs should issue annual reports on their~~
17 ~~progress in achieving the policies and standards called for in the~~
18 ~~Artificial Production Review. The Council will act as a clearinghouse~~
19 ~~to obtain, compile, and distribute these annual reports for review by~~
20 ~~decision-makers and the public.~~

21 **Artificial Production Committee**

22 ~~In order to achieve a regional perspective and a unified approach to~~
23 ~~artificial production reform, an advisory committee to the Council~~
24 ~~will be created. The advisory committee will be tasked with reporting~~
25 ~~quarterly on implementation of artificial production reforms across~~
26 ~~the basin in a consistent, coordinated and efficient manner. A small~~
27 ~~team of agency personnel, independent scientists, and representatives~~
28 ~~of non-governmental organizations will be assigned to watch over and~~
29 ~~coordinate the reform effort. One early task for the committee will be~~
30 ~~to further define the approach, work plan and decision points for~~
31 ~~evaluating the purpose of all the artificial production programs and~~
32 ~~facilities over the next three years.~~

33 **f. Review of Hatchery and Wild Stocks**

34 ~~Congress initiated the Columbia River Hatchery Reform Project in~~
35 ~~2006. Part of that project is a Hatchery Scientific Review Group~~
36 ~~(HSRG) established to review hatchery and wild stocks in the basin to~~
37 ~~determine ways to improve management practices in order to meet~~
38 ~~conservation goals while providing for sustainable fisheries. – The~~
39 ~~review process encompasses all anadromous hatchery programs in the~~
40 ~~Columbia River Basin. The HSRG is scheduled to make~~
41 ~~recommendations on changes necessary in hatchery and harvest~~

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

practices consistent with regional conservation and harvest goals in December 2008. The HSRG’s recommendations will include standards for maintaining both integrated and segregated hatchery programs, including standards to indicate the proportion of wild fish returning to spawn that are necessary to maintain the genetic integrity of local populations. The Council will consider adoption of the HSRG recommendations into the program when completed.

1 **4. Harvest Strategies**

2
3 **Primary strategy:** ~~Assure that~~ **Ensure** subbasin plans are consistent with harvest
4 management practices and increase opportunities for harvest wherever feasible.
5

6 The Council makes no claim to regulatory authority over ~~harvest of~~ fish and
7 wildlife **harvest**. ~~The Council~~ recognizes and affirms ~~the~~ fish and wildlife
8 managers' legal jurisdiction and tribal trust and treaty rights. However, there is
9 little point in recommending funding for implementation of a subbasin plan when
10 the objectives for the plan cannot be reached under current harvest regimes. If,
11 for example, a wildlife mitigation project aims to re-establish an elk herd in a
12 subbasin, and existing regulations ~~will~~ allow for overly aggressive harvest of the
13 herd while it is first being established, there is good reason to doubt ~~that whether~~
14 the project ~~will~~ succeed. On the other hand, there is ~~also~~ no advantage to
15 increasing fish populations in the interest of greater harvest if the anticipated
16 harvest regimes will not allow that harvest to take place. A hatchery that rears
17 fish solely for harvest is of little benefit if the majority of those fish go uncaught
18 because the potential harvest is restricted by the presence of another, much
19 weaker stock.
20

21 Therefore, the Council adopts the following harvest strategies:

22 **a. Consider Adopting HSRG Recommendations**

23 ~~The HSRG is scheduled to~~ **Harvest and Escapement Goals**
24 ~~Each subbasin plan and~~ **make recommendations on changes necessary**
25 ~~in hatchery management plan must explicitly describe the expected~~
26 ~~contribution to and~~ harvest for each of the harvested stocks or species. ~~In~~
27 ~~the case of wildlife, the plan must indicate the area in which the wildlife~~
28 ~~will be harvested. In the case of fish, the plan must indicate the expected~~
29 ~~contribution to specific fisheries. In both instances, the plan must identify~~
30 ~~clear escapement goals for each species or stock and explain the basis on~~
31 ~~which that goal was chosen.~~

32
33 **Compatibility practices consistent with Harvest Regimes**
34 ~~Each subbasin plan and hatchery management plan must state the~~
35 ~~likelihood that adequate numbers of adults will remain or return to the~~
36 ~~subbasin to assure reproductive success and meet subbasin goals for the~~
37 ~~next generation. If the escapement required for the plan to succeed is~~
38 ~~greater than that which occurs under current~~ **regional conservation and**
39 ~~harvest regimes, then the plan should also indicate whether and how the~~
40 ~~current regimes will be adjusted and whether the managers for that harvest~~
41 ~~have concurred with the adjustment goals.~~ **The Council will consider**
42 **adopting the HSRG recommendations into the program when**
43 **completed.**
44

1 **b. Artificial Production**

2 Artificially produced fish created for harvest should not be produced
3 unless they can be effectively harvested in a fishery or provide other
4 significant benefits. The appropriate ~~reform for response to~~ artificial
5 production programs that do not meet this strategy is termination or
6 revision so that the program complies with this strategy.

7 **Opportunities for Increased Harvest**

8 ~~Each subbasin plan and hatchery management plan should identify~~
9 ~~(a) where there is an opportunity for a terminal fishery and (b) any~~
10 ~~instance in which increased harvest is possible but will not occur~~
11 ~~under the existing harvest regime, and the changes that would be~~
12 ~~necessary to allow the harvest to occur. The plan may also identify,~~
13 ~~and propose for funding if needed, equipment, marking techniques,~~
14 ~~management costs, and monitoring and evaluation costs required to~~
15 ~~establish the feasibility of selective harvest techniques that allow for~~
16 ~~additional harvest of species and stocks originating in that subbasin~~
17 ~~or at that hatchery.~~

18 **c. Monitoring and Reporting**

19 The Council recommends the following practices in harvest management,
20 and ~~will seek to encourage~~encourages the region’s fish and wildlife
21 managers to adopt them:

- 22
- 23 • ~~Maintain~~Encourage an open and public process, ~~allowing public~~
24 ~~observation of harvest and allocation discussions~~ and **provide** timely
25 dissemination of harvest-related information in a publicly- accessible
26 manner.
- 27
- 28 • Integrate harvest management to ~~assure that~~ensure conservation
29 efforts made in one fishery can be passed through subsequent fisheries.
- 30
- 31 • Manage harvest to ensure ~~the that~~ risk of imprecision and error in
32 predicted run size does not threaten the survival and recovery of
33 naturally spawning populations.
- 34
- 35 • Monitor inriver and ocean fisheries and routinely estimate stock
36 composition and stock-specific abundance, escapement, catch, and age
37 distribution. Expand monitoring programs as necessary to reduce
38 critical uncertainties. Manage data so that it can be easily integrated
39 and readily available in real time.
- 40
- 41 • Manage harvest consistent with the protection and recovery of
42 naturally spawning populations.
- 43

1
2
3
4

- ~~Biennially, solicit~~**Encourage** scientific peer review of harvest management plans and analyses, ~~starting in January 2002.~~ **to assess compatibility with strategies and objectives in this program**~~program~~.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

5. Hydrosystem Passage and Operations Strategies

Primary ~~strategy~~strategies: Provide conditions within the hydrosystem for adult and juvenile fish that 1) most closely approximate the natural physical and biological conditions;; 2) provide adequate levels of survival to support fish population recovery based in subbasin plans; 3) support expression of life history diversity;; and 4) ~~assure~~**ensure that** flow and spill operations are optimized to produce the greatest biological benefits with the least–adverse effects on resident fish while assuring an adequate, efficient, economical, and reliable power supply.⁴

⁴ The hydrosystem passage and operations strategies are presented in more detail in Section VI.

1 **Hydrosystem Passage and Operations**

2 ~~The development and operation of the hydrosystem has major impacts on~~
3 ~~fish.~~

4 ~~These impacts are not restricted to anadromous fish. White sturgeon~~
5 ~~spawning depends on certain patterns of spring flow; trout and other species~~
6 ~~migrate between reservoirs and adjoining streams and are affected by~~
7 ~~reservoir levels. High rates of discharge from a reservoir may reduce the~~
8 ~~food supply available to fish in that reservoir and even entrain those fish,~~
9 ~~sending them downstream. Even fish living in free flowing stretches below~~
10 ~~reservoirs can be strongly impacted by sudden changes in river elevation or~~
11 ~~water temperature resulting from operation of the upstream project.~~

12 ~~Wildlife are also affected by the development and operation of hydroelectric~~
13 ~~projects. In particular, reservoir levels greatly affect the trees, shrubs, and~~
14 ~~grasses that would normally grow at the water's edge and provide wildlife~~
15 ~~nesting and feeding habitat.~~

16 ~~All of these impacts are basically habitat issues. The strategies identified~~
17 ~~earlier in the habitat section are applicable here as well, and several of the~~
18 ~~strategies in this section are simply specialized applications of those in the~~
19 ~~habitat section.~~

20 ~~The Council recognizes that the National Marine Fisheries Service and U.S.~~
21 ~~Fish and Wildlife Service, acting under the authority of the Endangered~~
22 ~~Species Act, will be prescribing detailed conditions for the improvement and~~
23 ~~operation of the hydrosystem through the issuance of biological opinions.~~
24 ~~These conditions focus on the needs of listed species, especially migration and~~
25 ~~passage needs.~~

26 ~~The Council plans to enact a mainstem coordination plan containing~~
27 ~~measures for the hydrosystem by October 2001 in a subsequent phase of this~~
28 ~~program. The purpose of these measures will be to recommend ways in~~
29 ~~which the hydrosystem operations called for in the biological opinions could~~
30 ~~be adjusted, so as to assure that those operations meet the needs of ESA-~~
31 ~~listed stocks and the dictates of the Northwest Power Act. The hydrosystem~~
32 ~~measures will also provide necessary guidance to the Council's subbasin~~
33 ~~planning process.~~

34 ~~Until October 2001, when the Council plans to have these hydrosystem~~
35 ~~measures developed, the Council recommends that Bonneville, the Bureau of~~
36 ~~Reclamation, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, and other operating~~
37 ~~agencies not move forward with previously called for but unimplemented~~
38 ~~measures in Sections 5 and 6 of the 1994-1995 Fish and Wildlife Program~~
39 ~~(Council document 94-55) relating to hydrosystem operations, including~~
40 ~~specific flow augmentation measures, except to the extent the measures are~~

1 fully consistent with the hydrosystem strategies outlined in this Phase One
2 program.

3 ~~The Power Act requires the Council, in this program, to adopt measures to~~
4 ~~“protect, mitigate, and enhance” all fish and wildlife affected by the~~
5 ~~operation of the hydrosystem, and to include measures that provide for~~
6 ~~improved survival of fish at hydroelectric facilities and for flows of sufficient~~
7 ~~quality and quantity to improve production, migration and survival. The Act~~
8 ~~also requires the Council to assure that the measures in this program are~~
9 ~~consistent with “an adequate, economical, efficient, and reliable power~~
10 ~~supply.”~~

11 ~~While the Council must consider the impacts of the conditions imposed by~~
12 ~~the federal agencies under the Endangered Species Act, the Council has a~~
13 ~~broader mandate. As part of this mandate, the Council recognizes that the~~
14 ~~survival of listed species affected by the hydrosystem must be an integral~~
15 ~~component of the Council’s fish and wildlife plan. Addressing Endangered~~
16 ~~Species Act requirements together with the long-term management of~~
17 ~~healthy stocks is a long-term planning objective of the Council. The~~
18 ~~Northwest Power Act requires that the Council must assure that the needs of~~
19 ~~fish and wildlife are met as efficiently as possible, while also assuring the~~
20 ~~continued reliability, adequacy and affordability of the regional power~~
21 ~~supply.~~

22 ~~The Council believes that the federal agencies operating the hydrosystem will~~
23 ~~have some flexibility in implementing the conditions imposed under the~~
24 ~~Endangered Species Act. In addition, the manner in which the hydrosystem~~
25 ~~is operated outside of the circumstances regulated by the Endangered Species~~
26 ~~Act may still have important consequences for fish and wildlife.~~

27 ~~The Council adopts the following hydrosystem strategies:~~

28 ~~Strategy: Provide conditions in the hydrosystem for adult and juvenile fish~~
29 ~~that most closely approximate natural physical and biological conditions.~~

30 ~~In its Energy and Water Development appropriations bill for Fiscal Year~~
31 ~~1998, Congress asked the Council, with the assistance of the Independent~~
32 ~~Scientific Advisory Board, to review the capital improvements at mainstem~~
33 ~~dams proposed by the Corps of Engineers. The reports produced by this~~
34 ~~review contain a set of technical findings and recommendations. The reports~~
35 ~~are included in the Technical Appendix. Based on these reports, and the~~
36 ~~recommendations of others, the Council is adopting this general strategy,~~
37 ~~which includes, but is not limited to, the following elements:~~

38 ~~Protect Biological Diversity~~

39 ~~Actions to improve juvenile and adult fish passage through mainstem dams,~~
40 ~~including the use of fish transportation, should protect biological diversity by~~

1 benefiting the range of species, stocks and life-history types in the river, and
2 should favor solutions that best fit natural behavior patterns and river
3 processes. Survival in the natural river should be the baseline against which
4 to measure the effectiveness of other passage methods. To meet the diverse
5 needs of multiple species and allow for uncertainty, multiple juvenile passage
6 methods may be necessary at individual projects.

7 **Juvenile Fish Passage**

8 To provide passage for juvenile fish that closely approximates natural
9 physical and biological conditions, and to increase the energy produced by
10 the hydrosystem, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers should 1) continue
11 testing and developing surface bypass systems, taking into account the widest
12 range of biological diversity, utilizing an expedited approach to prototype
13 development, and ensuring full evaluation for the developmental phase; 2)
14 relocate bypass outfalls in those circumstances where there are problems
15 with predation and juvenile fish injury and mortality; and 3) modify turbines
16 to improve juvenile survival.

17 **Adult Passage**

18 The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers should improve the overall effectiveness
19 of the adult fish passage program. This includes expediting schedules to
20 design and install improvements to fish passage facilities. Cool water releases
21 from reservoirs should continue to be used to facilitate migration. More
22 emphasis should be placed on monitoring and evaluation, increased accuracy
23 of fish counts, installation of PIT tag detectors, evaluation of escapement
24 numbers to spawning grounds and hatcheries, research into water
25 temperature effects on fish passage, and the connection between fish passage
26 design and fish behavior.

27 **Annual Report on Capital Improvements**

28 The Corps of Engineers, working within the regional fish and wildlife project
29 selection process, should report to the Council annually on how the
30 prioritization criteria and decisions on passage improvements take into
31 account these principles.

32 **Implementation of These Principles**

33 The Council 1) expects that the Independent Scientific Review panel will
34 apply these principles during the panel's review of the reimbursable portion
35 of the Bonneville fish and wildlife budget, which includes the Corps' passage
36 program; 2) will itself apply these standards in its review of any Independent
37 Scientific Review Panel report and resulting recommendations to Congress
38 on these passage budget items; and 3) will recommend to Congress, in its
39 reimbursable budget recommendations, that budget requests from the Corps
40 of Engineers be evaluated for consistency with these principles.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40

~~Protect and Expand Mainstem Spawning and Rearing Habitat~~

~~The operation of the hydrosystem should protect, and where possible, expand, mainstem spawning and rearing areas. In instances where this strategy conflicts with flows for juvenile migration or temperature control, the system operators should identify the potential conflict and seek recommendations from state and federal agencies and tribes on how to best meet the two needs.~~

~~Inriver Migration and Transportation~~

~~Because the existence of the dams and reservoirs creates conditions that are not natural, the Council, while seeking to improve inriver conditions, recognizes that there are survival benefits from transportation of migrating juvenile salmon. Therefore, the Council 1) accepts juvenile fish transportation as a transitional strategy; 2) will give priority to the funding of research that more accurately measures the effect of improved inriver migration compared to transportation; 3) will recommend increasing inriver migration when research demonstrates that salmon survival would be improved as a result of such migration; and 4) endorses the strategy of "spread the risk" which, depending on water and environmental conditions, divides migrating juvenile salmon and steelhead between inriver passage and transportation.~~

~~Strategy: Manage the hydrosystem so that patterns of flow more closely approximate the natural hydrographic patterns, and assure any changes in water management are premised upon, and proportionate to, fish and wildlife benefits.~~

~~Balance Systemwide Water Management Among Different Species and Life Stages~~

~~Systemwide water management, including flow augmentation from storage reservoirs, should balance the needs of resident fish with those of anadromous fish, and the needs of migrating fish with those of spawning and rearing fish. In instances where flow management needs conflict with this program, the system operators should identify the potential conflict and seek recommendations from the Council, fish and wildlife agencies and tribes and other affected entities on how best to balance the different needs. Conflicts shall be reported to the Council.~~

~~Coordination~~

~~In fulfilling the operating conditions for the hydrosystem established under the Endangered Species Act and Clean Water Act, the federal system operating agencies shall, to the fullest extent practicable, meet those conditions in a manner which protects other fish and wildlife species affected by the operation of the hydrosystem. In providing information on operations~~

1 to meet the needs of a particular species or set of species, the Fish Passage
2 Center shall take into account, through consultation with the fish and
3 wildlife managers, the needs of other species and indicate how these needs
4 can best be balanced or accommodated. The fish and wildlife managers
5 should indicate to the Fish Passage Center whether such conflicts among the
6 needs of different species exist and, when present, recommend remedies. On
7 an interim basis, the operating conditions needed to meet the needs of these
8 other species are those that were adopted by the Council in Section 10 of its
9 1995 program amendments. When the mainstem coordination plan and
10 subbasin plans are adopted by the Council, the relevant conditions will be
11 included in the plans.

12 **Strategy:** Assure that flow and spill operations are optimized to produce the
13 greatest benefits with the least adverse effects on resident fish while assuring
14 an adequate, efficient, economical, and reliable power supply.

15 The Council's program must be consistent with "an adequate, efficient,
16 economical, and reliable power supply." The Council will analyze potential
17 impacts to the power system of different water management and operation
18 strategies, including proposed federal operations to meet Endangered Species
19 Act and Clean Water Act requirements, determine if the operations ensure
20 an adequate, efficient, economical, and reliable power supply, and
21 recommend operational changes if not. The Council is particularly interested
22 in the efficiency and effectiveness of the operations undertaken for fish and
23 wildlife. The Council will be preparing recommendations that optimize
24 energy production, capacity and especially reliability while meeting diverse
25 fish and wildlife needs.

26 **In-season Changes**

27 The Bonneville Power Administration, in consultation with the U.S. Army
28 Corps of Engineers and the Bureau of Reclamation, before undertaking a
29 particular operation of the hydrosystem to benefit, or that will adversely
30 affect, fish or wildlife, shall provide a written statement of the estimated cost
31 or benefit and impact on the power system of the proposed action. The Fish
32 Passage Center, in consultation with the fish and wildlife managers, shall
33 provide a brief written statement of the incremental benefit or detriment to
34 fish or wildlife anticipated from the proposed change. In the event that a fish
35 and wildlife agency or tribe believes that the proposed action will have an
36 adverse effect on fish and wildlife, Bonneville should also obtain a brief
37 written statement of the adverse effect. Copies of these statements should be
38 furnished to those parties considering the request, to the Council, and made
39 available to the public. This provision shall not apply to an operation in
40 response to a biological opinion requirement if the requirement is so specific
41 that it leaves essentially no discretion to the operating agencies on how to
42 fulfill the requirement.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36

~~Annual Hydrosystem Accountability Report~~

~~Bonneville and the operating agencies shall assist the Council in producing a report that shall provide an accounting of Bonneville’s fish and wildlife expenditures and hydropower operations costs. For example, the report should summarize 1) the overall cost and impact to the hydro and transmission system of operations for fish and wildlife and other non-power needs; 2) a summary of each change requested, the outcome of that request, and the reason for approving or denying that request; and 3) recommendations from fish and wildlife managers and tribes for modifications to the operating regimes or investments in facilities to improve fish and wildlife habitat within the hydrosystem without undue affect on the costs to, or impacts on, the hydrosystem.~~

~~•Annual Report on Flow Augmentation~~

~~Bonneville, in consultation with the National Marine Fisheries Service and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, shall prepare an annual report based on seientific research for review by the Independent Scientific Advisory Board that documents the flow augmentation actions taken, the benefits of flow augmentation for fish survival, and the precise attributes of flow that may make it beneficial.~~

~~•Fish Passage Center~~

~~This program continues the operation of the Fish Passage Center. The Council will establish and appoint an oversight board for the Fish Passage Center, with representation from the National Marine Fisheries Service, the tribes, the Council, and others, to provide policy guidance and assure regional accountability and compatibility with the regional data management system. The Fish Passage Center shall prepare an annual report to the Council and the oversight board, summarizing its activities and accomplishments.~~

~~•In-season Management Coordination~~

~~Through the biological opinions, the federal ageneies have established an implementation structure for annual and in-season operations and for~~

1 ~~recommendations on funding for passage improvements. It is the Council's~~
2 ~~perspective that the part of the implementation structure that allows for~~
3 ~~technical review functions adequately, although there is a need for greater~~
4 ~~participation by affected entities. The Council recommends to the federal~~
5 ~~agencies that the Technical Management Team and the Implementation~~
6 ~~Team be jointly sponsored by the Council and the federal agencies, and allow~~
7 ~~for effective participation in these considerations by the relevant federal~~
8 ~~agencies, the Council and states, the tribes of the Columbia River Basin, and~~
9 ~~other affected entities, in a highly public forum. The Council will initiate~~
10 ~~discussions to jointly sponsor these coordination teams.~~

11
12 **•Annual Operating Plan**

13
14 ~~The Council requests that each year, prior to March 1, the in-season~~
15 ~~management participants prepare and make available to the Council and the~~
16 ~~public an annual operating plan, describing the specific hydrosystem~~
17 ~~operations recommended for that year. In those instances where specific~~
18 ~~operations have not been determined as of March 1, the plan should identify~~
19 ~~the additional decisions that will need to be made, and the basis on which the~~
20 ~~participants expect to make them.~~

21
22 **•Emergency Actions**

23
24 ~~To ensure the reliability of the power supply, power system operators may~~
25 ~~curtail fish and wildlife operations temporarily during emergency~~
26 ~~situations.⁵ A predetermined protocol should be established by the Technical~~
27 ~~Management Team and the Implementation Team for emergency actions.⁶~~
28 ~~However, the option of curtailing fish and wildlife operations during~~

⁵ An emergency can occur due to a major temperature drop like those experienced in 1989 and 1990 or due to the temporary loss of generation from a major resource like the Columbia Generating Station or a powerhouse at a mainstem dam, or the loss of a major portion of the transmission capability on the northern or southern interties.

⁶ In general, all existing resources in the Western Integrated System should be dispatched prior to curtailing fish and wildlife operations. All reasonable efforts should also be made to relieve the emergency using demand-side resources, including requests for customers to voluntarily cut back use. During winter emergencies, water being held in reservoirs for spring and summer flow augmentation may be drafted. Once the emergency is resolved, any flow augmentation water used should be replaced as soon as possible, to the extent possible. During summer emergencies, bypass spill for fish may be curtailed or reduced or additional flow augmentation water may be released.

1 emergency situations should not be used in lieu of establishing an adequate
2 and reliable power supply.⁷

3
4 ~~Strategy: Establish and maintain a plan to assure coordination of mainstem~~
5 ~~operations and improvements.~~

6
7 ~~•Mainstem Coordination Plan~~

8
9 ~~The Council will assist interested parties to develop and recommend for~~
10 ~~adoption into this program a mainstem coordination plan, similar to the~~
11 ~~subbasin plans described in this program. This plan will develop standards~~
12 ~~for systemwide coordination, such as flow regimes, spill, reservoir elevations,~~
13 ~~water retention times, passage modifications at mainstem dams, and~~
14 ~~operational requirements to protect mainstem spawning and rearing areas.~~
15 ~~This plan is in addition to the annual operating plan described earlier.~~

16
17 ~~•Specific Biological Objectives and Measures Relevant to Hydrosystem~~
18 ~~Operations~~

19
20 ~~As the Council considers and adopts specific objectives and measures at the~~
21 ~~system, province, and subbasin levels, the Council may adopt more specific~~
22 ~~biological objectives and measures for mainstem operations. As provided in~~
23 ~~the section on further rulemakings, page 51, the mainstem coordination plan~~
24 ~~will be the vehicle for considering and adopting these specific objectives and~~
25 ~~measures. Specific objectives and measures will be coordinated with the~~
26 ~~mainstem and hydrosystem standards and actions contained in the National~~
27 ~~Marine Fisheries Service's and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's biological~~
28 ~~opinions and with the requirements of applicable federal laws.~~

29
30 ~~•Key Uncertainties~~

31

⁷ If the Northwest power system is deemed to be inadequate, new resources (whether generating or demand-side) should be developed to bring the system up to expected standards. Resources that integrate more effectively with fish and wildlife operations should be given highest priority for development.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36

~~As part of its cycle for project funding recommendations, the Council will regularly convene a meeting of fish and wildlife agencies and tribes and hydrosystem operating agencies for the purpose of identifying key uncertainties about the operation of the hydrosystem and associated mainstem mitigation activities such as transportation of juvenile fish. This list of key uncertainties will be the starting point for targeted requests for research proposals.~~

~~•Longer-term Planning Perspectives~~

~~The region is in need of long-term planning regarding the current constraints on, and objectives of, water management, including current flood control requirements; the limitations on the purposes of managing water under the Columbia River Treaty; the requirements, opportunities and challenges of considering broader habitat needs, such as mainstem spawning and rearing habitat, estuary and plume impacts, and ocean habitat; and the region's long-term energy and capacity power system needs in the context of a changing energy industry, and the potential implications for fish and wildlife.~~

~~Working with federal agencies in the region, the tribes and the state fish and wildlife agencies, the Council will facilitate a long-term planning study to include consideration of reconfiguration and operational alternatives that could provide benefits for fish and wildlife on a broad scale. The study should also assess the economic and hydropower impacts of all reconfiguration and operational alternatives.~~

~~Strategy: Assure that hydroelectric relicensing and future development provides protection for fish and wildlife.~~

~~•Hydroelectric Development and Licensing~~

~~The Council has adopted a set of standards for the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and others to apply to the development and licensing of hydroelectric facilities in the Columbia River Basin. This includes designating certain river reaches in the basin as "protected areas," where the Council believes that hydroelectric development would have~~

~~unacceptable risks of loss to fish and wildlife species of concern, their productive capacity, or their habitat. The standards, the river reaches to be protected, and the conditions relating to that protection, are identified in the Future Hydroelectric Development section of the Appendix to this program.~~

6. Wildlife Strategies

Primary strategy: Complete the current mitigation program for construction and inundation losses and include wildlife mitigation for all operational losses as an integrated part of habitat protection and restoration.

~~Some previous versions of this fish and wildlife program have treated wildlife mitigation measures as separate from fish mitigation measures. In this program, the Council has revised its approach, treating a given habitat as an ecosystem that includes both fish and wildlife.~~

The program established wildlife loss assessments due to hydrosystem construction and inundation. See Table 11-4⁸ of the Council's 1994-1995 Fish and Wildlife Program, which is included on pages C-4 thru C-7 of the Appendix to this program, estimated wildlife losses due to hydropower construction. ~~The 1994-1995 Program called.~~ **The Council expects upon** the fish and wildlife managers and Bonneville to use this table as the starting point for wildlife mitigation measures ~~and as well as short- and long-term mitigation agreements.~~ ~~The program also called upon~~ **directs** these parties to reach agreement on how wildlife mitigation projects and fish mitigation projects should be credited toward identified losses.

A portion of the habitat units identified in Table 11-4 have been acquired in ~~the~~ wildlife mitigation projects to date, and some mitigation project agreements establish the basis on which the project will be credited toward these losses. However, no agreement has been reached on the full extent of wildlife losses due to the operations of the hydrosystem, nor has there been agreement on how to credit wildlife benefits resulting from riparian habitat improvements undertaken to benefit fish.

The extent of the wildlife mitigation is of particular importance to agencies and tribes in the ~~so-called~~ "blocked" areas, where anadromous fish runs ~~once existed but were blocked~~ **have been extirpated** by development of the hydrosystem, **and where full mitigation cannot be accomplished through resident fish substitution alone.** ~~While there are limited opportunities for improving resident fish in those areas, resident fish substitution alone seldom is an adequate mitigation~~ Given the vision of this program, the strong scientific case for a more comprehensive, ecosystem-based approach, and the shift **in focus** to

⁸ This table originally appears in the Council's 1994-1995 Fish and Wildlife Program and has been part of every program since.

1 implementation of ~~this program~~ through provincial and subbasin plans, the
2 Council believes that the wildlife mitigation projects should be integrated with the
3 fish mitigation projects **as much as possible**.
4

5
6 ~~Therefore~~ The Council adopts the following wildlife strategies:
7

8 **a. Completion of Current Mitigation Program**

9 ~~To provide an orderly transition between the past fish and wildlife~~
10 ~~program and this program,~~ Bonneville and the fish and wildlife managers
11 should complete mitigation agreements for the remaining habitat units.
12 ~~These agreements should equal 200 percent of the habitat units (2:1 ratio)~~
13 ~~identified as~~ **identified in Table 11-4 representing the** unannualized
14 losses of wildlife habitat from construction and inundation of the federal
15 hydropower system ~~as identified in Table 11-4, which is included in the~~
16 ~~Appendix to this program. This mitigation is presumed to cover all~~
17 ~~construction and inundation losses, including annualized losses.~~

18 **Bonneville PA and the fish and wildlife managers should develop**
19 **agreements by 2011 and report back to the Council on progress.** In
20 addition, for each wildlife agreement that does not already provide for
21 long-term maintenance of the habitat, Bonneville and the applicable
22 management agency shall propose ~~for Council consideration and~~
23 ~~recommendation a maintenance agreement a management plan~~ adequate
24 to sustain the minimum credited habitat values for the life of the project.
25

26 **Beginning in the 2000 Program, the Council called for these**
27 **mitigation agreements to equal 200 percent of the remaining habitat**
28 **units (2:1 ratio). The Council chose the 2:1 crediting ratio to address**
29 **the inability to precisely determine the habitat units resulting from**
30 **acquiring an interest in property that already has wildlife value or the**
31 **additional losses represented by annualization of the losses. The**
32 **Council adopted and continues to endorse the 2:1 crediting ratio for**
33 **the remaining habitat units. The ratio only applies when loss**
34 **estimates are not inaccurate due to stacking.**
35

36
37 **The Council recognizes that controversy over the program's crediting**
38 **ratio continues. The managers and Bonneville have not reached**
39 **agreement on how to credit wildlife benefits resulting from riparian**
40 **habitat improvements undertaken to benefit fish nor have they**
41 **reached agreement on the full extent of wildlife losses resulting from**
42 **operation of the hydrosystem. The Council will work with Bonneville**
43 **and the managers to address these and other issues associated with**
44 **loss assessments and crediting and to develop a comprehensive**
45 **agreement on the proper crediting ratio(s) or strategies that will allow**

1 the parties to reach long-term settlement agreements. This shall be
2 completed within one year of adoption of the amended program.
3 Once a comprehensive agreement has been reached, the Council will
4 consider adopting it into the program.
5

6 Whenever possible, wildlife mitigation should take place through
7 long-term agreements that have clear objectives, a plan for action
8 over time, a committed level of funding that provides a substantial
9 likelihood of achieving and sustaining the stated wildlife mitigation
10 objectives, and provisions to ensure effective implementation with
11 periodic monitoring and evaluation. Thus, wildlife mitigation
12 agreements should include the following elements:
13

- 14 • Measurable objectives, including acres of habitat types and
15 number of habitat units by species to be acquired, and a statement
16 estimating the contribution to addressing the wildlife losses
17 identified in Table 11-4 in the Appendix;
18
- 19 • Demonstration of consistency with the wildlife policies, objectives
20 and strategies in the Council's program, including with the
21 implementation priorities described in Tables 11-1, 11-2 and 11-3
22 in the Appendix;
23
- 24 • When possible, protection for riparian habitat that can benefit
25 both fish and wildlife, and protect high-quality native habitat and
26 species of special concern, including endangered, threatened, or
27 sensitive species;
28
- 29 • Incentives to ensure effective implementation of the agreement,
30 plan or action, with periodic monitoring and evaluation (including
31 a periodic audit) and reporting of results. At a minimum, annual
32 reports to Pisces⁹ must continue in order for the Council to
33 evaluate the mitigation benefits;
34
- 35 • Provisions for long-term maintenance of the habitat adequate to
36 sustain the minimum credited habitat values for the life of the
37 project; and
38
- 39 • Sufficient funding to demonstrate a substantial likelihood of
40 achieving and sustaining the wildlife mitigation objectives.

⁹ BPA created Pisces, a web-enabled software tool, to manage fish and wildlife projects within the Fish and Wildlife Program. Pisces provides an environment where contractors and project managers can create and manage projects. Pisces also provides access to reports on all aspects of the program's activity.

1 **b. Habitat Units and the Habitat Evaluation Procedure (HEP)**
2 **Methodology**

3 **The Council continues to endorse habitat units as the preferred unit**
4 **of measurement for mitigation accounting and the Habitat Evaluation**
5 **Procedure (HEP) methodology as the preferred method for estimating**
6 **habitat units lost and acquired. Parties to a wildlife mitigation**
7 **agreement may develop and use another method for evaluating**
8 **potential mitigation actions if, in the Council’s opinion, that**
9 **alternative e-method adequately takes into account both habitat**
10 **quantity and quality adequate to mitigate for the identified losses.**

11 **c. Allocation of Habitat Units**

12 Habitat acquired as mitigation for lost habitat units identified in Table 11-
13 4 must be acquired in the subbasin in which the lost units were located
14 unless otherwise agreed by the fish and wildlife agencies and tribes in that
15 subbasin.

16 **d. Habitat Enhancement Credits**

17 Habitat enhancement credits should be provided to Bonneville when
18 habitat management activities funded by Bonneville lead to a net increase
19 in habitat value when compared to the level identified in the baseline
20 habitat inventory and subsequent habitat inventories. This determination
21 should be made through the periodic monitoring of the project site using
22 the Habitat Evaluation Procedure (HEP) methodology. Bonneville should
23 be credited for habitat enhancement efforts at a ratio of one habitat unit
24 credited for every habitat unit gained.

25 **e. Operational Losses**

26 ~~An assessment should be conducted of~~ **As part of the programmatic**
27 **evaluation of the wildlife program described below, the Council will**
28 **consult with the wildlife managers and Bonneville on the value of**
29 **committing program resources at this time to assessing** direct
30 **operational impacts on wildlife habitat. Subbasin** **Operations loss**
31 **assessment work under way in the Kootenai Ssubbasin in 2008 may**
32 **serve as a -pilot project for this evaluation. The wildlife managers and**
33 **Bonneville should also consider using mitigation agreements to settle**
34 **operational losses in lieu of precise assessments of impacts. Revised**
35 **subbasin** plans will serve as the vehicles to provide mitigation for **any**
36 **identified** direct operational losses and **for** secondary losses **to wildlife**
37 **due to declines in fish populations resulting from hydropower**
38 **development.** Annualization will not be used in determining the
39 mitigation due for these losses. However, where operational or secondary
40 losses ~~have~~ already ~~have~~ been addressed in an existing wildlife mitigation
41 agreement, the terms of that agreement will apply.
42

1 **f. Mitigation Crediting Forum**

2 **In consultation with the wildlife managers, Bonneville, and other**
3 **interested parties, the Council will establish a Wildlife Mitigation**
4 **Crediting Forum. The purpose of the Crediting Forum will be to**
5 **establish a commonly accepted ledger of habitat units acquired and to**
6 **recommend ways to resolve issues about accounting for ~~how~~ habitat**
7 **units ~~are accounted for~~. The Crediting Forum will develop a common**
8 **data base for tracking, assigning and recording habitat units.**

9 **g. Implementation Guidelines**

10 Project selection will be guided by subbasin plans incorporating wildlife
11 ~~elements~~ **focal species and management strategies**. The subbasin plans
12 will reflect the current basin-wide vision, biological objectives and
13 strategies, and ~~will also~~ **will** outline more specific short-term objectives
14 and strategies for achieving specific wildlife mitigation goals. The plans
15 will act as work plans for the fish and wildlife managers and tribes, with
16 an emphasis on fully mitigating the construction and inundation and direct
17 operational losses by a time certain, and will be revisited regularly as part
18 of the provincial **project** review cycle. Mitigation programs should
19 provide protection of habitat through fee-title acquisition, conservation
20 easement, lease, or **other management strategies in** management plans
21 **that provide for the protection of the habitat units** for the life of the
22 project.
23

1 **7. Resident Fish Substitution Strategies**

2
3 **Primary Strategy: Resident fish substitution is an appropriate mitigation**
4 **strategy in areas blocked to salmon and steelhead by the development and**
5 **operation of the hydropower system.** Flexibility in approach is needed to
6 develop a program that provides resident fish substitutions for lost salmon and
7 steelhead where in-kind mitigation cannot occur.

8
9 **All proposals for on-going or new resident fish substitution projects that**
10 **involve or might involve a non-native species must include a comprehensive**
11 **Environmental Risk Assessment of potential negative impacts on native fish**
12 **species. The Independent Scientific Advisory Board recommended a**
13 **template for such an environmental risk assessment.**¹⁰ Starting with that
14 **template, the Council will work with the Independent Scientific Review Panel**
15 **and the appropriate fish and wildlife agencies and tribes to develop the final**
16 **Environmental Risk Assessment template.**
17

¹⁰ *Non-native Species Impacts on Native Salmonids in the Columbia River Basin, Including Recommendations for Evaluating the Use of Non-Native Fish Species in Resident Fish Substitution Projects*, Council Document ISAB 2008-04 (posted at www.nwcouncil.org/fw/isab/).

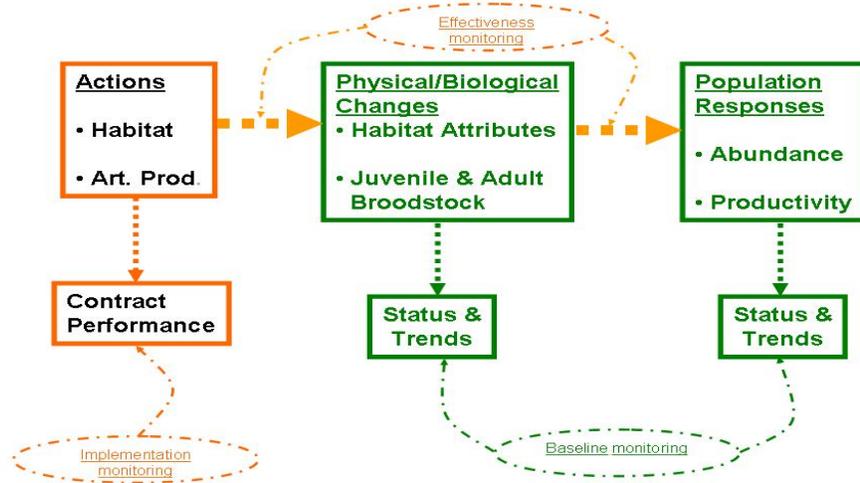
1 **8. Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and Reporting Strategies**

2
3 **Primary strategies: 1) Identify priority fish, wildlife and ecosystem elements**
4 **of the program that can be monitored in a cost effective manner, evaluate the**
5 **monitoring data and adaptively manage the program based on results; 2)**
6 **research and report on key uncertainties; 3) make information from this**
7 **program available; and 4) to the extent practicable ensure consistency with**
8 **other processes.**

9
10 **An important element of the fish and wildlife program is to identify measures**
11 **to improve conditions for fish and wildlife. A large body of anadromous fish**
12 **data but considerably less resident fish and wildlife data inform the**
13 **development and implementation of these measures. Some of this**
14 **information is collected through processes that do not receive funding**
15 **through the fish and wildlife program but are available to the program to**
16 **help inform decision-making.**

17
18 **Focusing on the program’s biological and ecosystem priorities, a monitoring**
19 **program should be designed to be efficiently distributed in an integrated,**
20 **cost-effective manner. The program should identify priority data gaps to**
21 **acquire new data. Additionally, every effort should be made to eliminate or**
22 **consolidate redundant monitoring and evaluation efforts. The Council**
23 **intends that the region gather sufficient information to make good choices**
24 **among possible measures and projects implementing those measures and the**
25 **monitoring efforts be integrated with relevant biological opinions, recovery**
26 **plans and other guidance.**

27
28 **Monitoring and evaluation has several purposes: 1) tracking the**
29 **implementation of measures; 2) tracking the status and trends of priority**
30 **focal species and their limiting factors in priority areas; and 3) determining**
31 **the effectiveness of projects carried out under this program.**



1
2 **Figure 1. This figure shows how projects carried out for the purposes of achieving**
3 **status and trend responses work with the various types of monitoring.**
4

5 **Biological and ecosystem responses to projects are often small and difficult to**
6 **detect when compared to the variability of natural systems. Monitoring and**
7 **evaluation designs should be developed to achieve the highest level of**
8 **certainty or confidence with respect to outcomes. However, the Council**
9 **recognizes that tradeoffs will need to be considered when it comes to**
10 **developing the best monitoring and evaluation design and cost balance. This**
11 **may mean establishing a lower level of confidence with respect to the size and**
12 **scope of monitoring and evaluation designs instead of the 95 percent level of**
13 **certainty traditionally pursued by investigators. In some instances,**
14 **measuring individual project effectiveness suffices. In other cases,**
15 **monitoring the bulk effectiveness of a suite of projects is appropriate.**

16 **a. Identify Monitoring and Evaluation Needs**

17 **Guidelines for collecting and evaluating data: The Council will**
18 **involve all interested parties in the region to establish and periodically**
19 **adjust guidelines for monitoring and evaluation efforts coordinated**
20 **through the program. The Council intends to use monitoring**
21 **primarily to track progress and to adaptively manage the**
22 **implementation of priority projects as identified through an effective**
23 **evaluation program.**

24
25 **Standards for monitoring: Monitoring and evaluation activities**
26 **proposed for funding under this program should satisfy the following**
27 **criteria:**

- 28
29
30
 - **All implementation projects under this program will have some level of monitoring and evaluation and must have a clear**

1 linkage to the appropriate program or subbasin goals, limiting
2 factors, priority reaches, and focal species.

- 3
- 4 • **Monitoring efforts must collect or identify nearby data that are**
5 **appropriate for tracking focal species and ecosystem variables**
6 **and, through evaluations, determine the effectiveness of**
7 **projects in meeting their intended purpose. To the extent**
8 **practicable, monitoring activities will be designed to represent**
9 **entire populations, subbasin-scale ecosystem functions or the**
10 **effectiveness of suites of projects.**
- 11
- 12 • **The methods and protocols used in data collection and**
13 **evaluation must be consistent with guidelines approved by the**
14 **Council. Periodically, the Council will adopt or update**
15 **relevant monitoring and evaluation methods and protocols.**
- 16
- 17 • **Monitoring and evaluation projects should identify effective**
18 **and efficient monitoring and evaluation tasks related to the**
19 **objectives, identify who will do the monitoring and reporting**
20 **and on what schedule, incorporate independent review, and**
21 **provide a budget for the monitoring and evaluation work.**
- 22
- 23 • **All monitoring and evaluation funded under this program**
24 **must be made readily available to all interested parties. This**
25 **includes abstracts and information about how to obtain the full**
26 **text of reports and data. Monitoring and evaluation project**
27 **managers are required to submit annual progress reports**
28 **containing environmental, fish, and wildlife data gathered**
29 **within the previous year.**

30 **b. Research**

31 **The Council will identify research priorities to resolve critical**
32 **ecosystem or biological uncertainties. Research will focus on those**
33 **areas where, in a reasonable amount of time, results could be**
34 **generated or tools developed to better inform management decisions**
35 **and to more efficiently expend program resources.**

- 36
- 37 • **Research plan: The Council will update its research plan, which**
38 **identifies major research topics and establishes priorities for**
39 **research funding.**
- 40
- 41 • **Coordination: The research plan will be updated in an open**
42 **manner designed to ensure independent scientific review, input**
43 **from fish and wildlife agencies and tribes, independent scientists,**
44 **federal agencies, and other interested parties in the region.**
- 45

- **Open access to results:** All research funded under this program must be made readily available to all interested parties. This includes abstracts and information about how to obtain the full text of reports and data. Research project managers will submit annual progress reports containing environmental, fish, and wildlife data gathered within the previous year. Research managers also will complete a report of all relevant information and research results including full reports and abstracts within six months after conducting each significant phase of a research project.
- **“Science and Policy” exchanges:** Approximately every two years the Council will co-sponsor a Columbia River science and policy conference to discuss scientific developments in policy key areas. The Council will work with the Independent Scientific Advisory Board to identify the agenda. After each exchange a summary report with implementation recommendations will be produced and posted to the Council’s website. This information will be used to update the research plan.

c. Reporting and Data Management

Data management strategies support monitoring, evaluation, and research actions and provide the means for making information and results easily available through publicly accessible Internet sites.

There are several reporting outcomes of the Council’s, monitoring, evaluation and research program: High-level indicators, information, project reporting, data gap analysis, efficiency estimates, cost accounting, and research. Each component serves a different purpose but together they provide important information necessary to determine whether actions implemented through the program are benefiting fish and wildlife populations.

- **High-Level Indicators:** The Council will adopt and periodically update high-level indicators for the purpose of reporting success and accomplishments to Congress, the region’s governors, legislators and to the citizens of the Northwest. High level indicators will include biological, implementation, and management components.
- **Reporting metrics and protocols:** The Council will adopt and periodically update a set of reporting metrics and protocols for the purpose of tracking the accomplishments of individual and multiple projects. These implementation metrics will vary according to the type of project (wildlife operations and maintenance costs, fencing for riparian protection, hatchery

1 production, etc.) and should accurately represent
2 accomplishments. The Council will also develop and adopt
3 protocols to monitor status and trends of fish populations as well
4 as to assess environmental conditions. Bonneville should ensure
5 that the Council metrics and protocols are included in project
6 contracts and incorporated into Bonneville-supported databases.
7

- 8 • **Annual report:** Program implementation must include a
9 systemwide annual report that describes whether the individual
10 projects in the subbasins are achieving the objectives of the
11 program. The report will describe the program's focus on priority
12 limiting factors and focal species in priority areas and any
13 adaptations necessary to address these factors. This report also
14 will summarize the status and trends of key species and ecosystem
15 parameters. The Council will work with all interested parties in
16 the basin to design this annual reporting process and associated
17 monitoring program, including describing the evaluation tasks
18 and the use of the independent science panels in assisting with this
19 evaluation effort.
20
- 21 • **Data management:** Data sets and accompanying metadata sets
22 associated with monitoring, evaluation and research actions
23 conducted through the Council's fish and wildlife program must
24 remain available to the region in an agreed upon electronic
25 format. Data and reports developed with Bonneville funds should
26 be considered in the public domain. Data and metadata must be
27 compiled, analyzed and reported annually and within six months
28 of the completion of the project.
29
- 30 • **Data gaps and redundancies:** Through reports and analyses,
31 developed in collaboration with others in the Columbia River
32 Basin, the Council will continue to identify data needs, survey
33 available data, reduce redundancies, and fill high-priority data
34 gaps. Particular attention will be given to finding ways to
35 effectively and efficiently use ecosystem, fish, and wildlife data
36 gathered by others for purposes other than meeting the needs of
37 this program.
38
- 39 • **Dissemination of data via the Internet:** Efficient data
40 management combined with simple, easy access to the data is
41 essential to allow effective reporting. The Council will collaborate
42 with others to establish an integrated Internet-based system for
43 the efficient dissemination of data relevant to this fish and wildlife
44 program. Data sites must be adaptively managed to stay current
45 with the evolving needs of data users in the Columbia River Basin.
46

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

Bonneville, in its contracting process, should ensure that monitoring activities adhere to the relevant protocols and methods that satisfy these reporting and data management criteria.

d. Consistency with Other Processes and Products

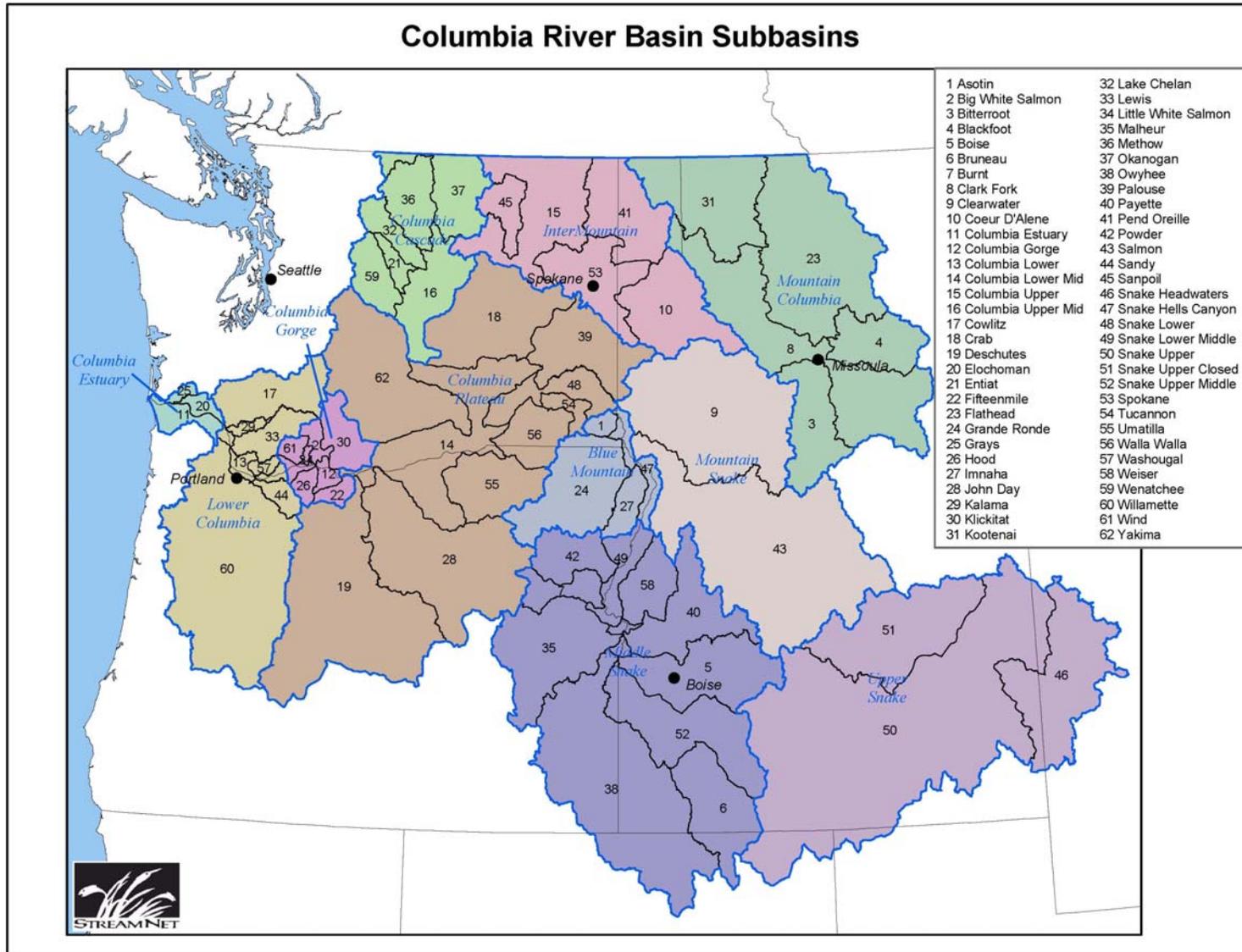
The Council’s monitoring, evaluation, research, data management, and reporting effort will be coordinated with similar efforts described in relevant biological opinions and recovery plans for the Columbia River Basin. Efficiencies that may come from integrating these efforts with the Council’s program will be identified and implemented where practical.

III. Ecological Provinces

The Council adopted an ecologically -based structure for the basin that emphasizes the interrelationships of the parts. The program organizes the Columbia River Basin into ~~11~~eleven ecological provinces -- groups of adjoining subbasins with similar climates and geology. The provinces' physical similarities are largely reflected in biological populations located within the provinces. -Populations within a province are more likely to be related to other populations within that province than to populations in other provinces ~~because where~~ life history and other biological characteristics often reflect physical habitat structure. Thus, provinces are appropriate units around which to organize and evaluate mitigation and recovery efforts.

For purposes of the program, a subbasin can only be in one province. Based on patterns of terrestrial vegetation, the headwaters of a subbasin are often distinct from the lower reaches. However, for purposes of planning, it makes little sense to split subbasins. Instead, the program ~~we~~treats each subbasin as an integral component of a set of related subbasins that ~~which~~ form a province. -Hydroelectric dams, including the major dams on the Columbia and Snake rivers, also are considered to be within provinces.

Figure 2. Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program Provinces and Subbasins



1 **Figure 3. Columbia River Basin Including Canada**



2
3

|

1 | **Table 1.**
 2 | **Geographic Structure of the Columbia River Ecosystem Excluding the Marine Landscape**

Landscape	Province	Subbasin
Columbia River Basin	Columbia River Estuary	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Elochoman - Grays - Columbia Estuary (Columbia River and all other tributaries from the ocean upstream to the confluence with the Cowlitz River)
	Lower Columbia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Cowlitz - Kalama - Lewis - Sandy - Washougal - Willamette - Columbia Lower (Columbia River and all other tributaries upstream of the Cowlitz to, but not including, Bonneville Dam)
	Columbia Gorge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Big White Salmon - Fifteenmile - Hood - Klickitat - Little White Salmon - Wind - Columbia Gorge (Columbia River and all other tributaries between, and including Bonneville and The Dalles dams)
	Columbia Plateau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Crab - Deschutes - John Day - Palouse - Tucannon - Umatilla - Walla Walla - Yakima - Columbia Lower Middle (Columbia River and all other tributaries upstream of The Dalles up to and including Wanapum Dam) - Snake Lower (Snake River and all other tributaries between the confluence with the Columbia river and the confluence with the Clearwater River)
	Columbia Cascade	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Entiat - Lake Chelan - Methow - Okanogan - Wenatchee - Columbia Upper Middle (Columbia River and all other tributaries upstream of Wanapum Dam to, but not including, chief Joseph Dam)
	Intermountain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Coeur d' Alene, including Coeur d'Alene Lake - Pend Oreille - San Poil - Spokane - Columbia Upper (Columbia River and all other tributaries from Chief Joseph Dam to the international border)
	Mountain Columbia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Bitterroot - Blackfoot - Clark Fork - Flathead - Kootenai
	Blue Mountain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Asotin - Grande Ronde - Imnaha - Snake Hells Canyon (Snake River and all other tributaries upstream of the confluence with the Clearwater River to, and including, Hells Canyon Dam)
	Mountain Snake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Clearwater - Salmon
	Middle Snake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Boise - Bruneau - Burnt - Malheur - Owyhee - Payette - Powder - Weiser - Snake Lower Middle (Snake River and all other tributaries upstream of Hells Canyon Dam to the confluence with the Boise River) - Snake Upper Middle (Snake River and all other tributaries from the confluence with the Boise River upstream to the confluence with Clover Creek near the town of King Hill)
Upper Snake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Upper Snake (Snake River and tributaries from Clover Creek upstream to the headwaters of the Henry's Fork) - Upper Closed Basin - Headwaters of the Snake (Snake River and all tributaries from the Heise gauging station upstream to the headwaters in Wyoming) 	

1 IV. Ocean-Conditions

2
3 **Primary strategy:** Identify the effects of ocean conditions on anadromous fish **survival**
4 and use this information to evaluate and adjust inland actions.

5
6 The Council considers the ocean environment an integral component of the Columbia
7 River ecosystem. Freshwater and marine environments are not independent from one
8 another ~~and~~. **They** are linked via large-scale atmospheric and oceanographic processes.
9 ~~The Council recognizes that these environments are utilized differently by different~~
10 ~~salmonid species and may serve different purposes~~ **The Council recognizes the**
11 **importance of ocean conditions to salmon survival and to the management and**
12 **conservation of Columbia River Basin salmon and steelhead populations.**

13
14 The ocean is not a constant environment. Variations in ocean conditions **can** occur over
15 relatively short **time** periods ~~of a few measured in~~ years, as well as over longer ~~term~~
16 cycles measured in decades. ~~Within any time period, geographic variation in conditions~~
17 ~~can be pronounced as well~~. As a result **of the varying ocean conditions**, salmon
18 populations are constantly fluctuating, and may pass through decade-long cycles of
19 abundance, followed by equally long cycles of scarcity.

20
21 While we cannot control the ocean itself, we can **monitor ocean conditions and related**
22 **salmon survival and** take actions to ~~assure~~ **improve the likelihood** that ~~the salmon of the~~
23 Columbia River Basin ~~are well prepared to~~ **salmon can** survive ~~in~~ varying **ocean**
24 conditions. ~~Better~~ **A better** understanding of the conditions salmon face in the ocean can
25 suggest which factors will be most critical to survival, and thus ~~give insight~~ **provide data**
26 as to which actions taken inland will ~~be the most valuable~~ **provide the greatest benefit.**

27
28 An accurate and timely understanding of ~~the ocean~~ survival ~~in the ocean~~ of each of the
29 Columbia River Basin stocks also helps ~~us~~ **the Council** assess the value of measures
30 undertaken in this program. Because the ultimate measure of success is the number of
31 adult fish returning, accurate monitoring and evaluation of inland efforts depends on
32 ~~our~~ **the** ability to isolate the effects of the ocean on a stock from the effects of ~~those~~ inland
33 actions.

34
35 Without the ability to distinguish ocean effects from other effects, ~~we~~ **the Council** may
36 be tempted to ~~correlate~~ ~~confuse~~ large **salmon** returns with successful mitigation
37 practices. ~~Or~~ **Likewise**, poor returns of adult fish may lead **the Council** to abandonment
38 ~~of~~ mitigation actions that are ~~in fact~~ highly beneficial **but which are overshadowed by**
39 **the effects of poor ocean conditions** unless ~~we can recognize that the Council can~~
40 **determine** the poor returns are in spite of, and not because of, these mitigation actions.

41 42 A. Ocean Strategies

43
44 The ~~estuary is addressed in~~ **Council adopts** the ~~habitat strategy section because protecting~~
45 ~~and restoring estuarine habitat is feasible and involves some of the same~~ **following**

1 strategies ~~as habitats farther inland. This section addresses~~for the freshwater plume, the
2 near-shore ~~ocean~~conditions, and the high seas, ~~which are less subject to human control.:~~

3 ~~The Council adopts the following ocean strategies:~~

4 **1. Manage for Variability**

5 ~~Variations in o~~Ocean conditions and regional climate ~~s and climate change~~ play
6 a large role in the survival of anadromous fish and other species in the Columbia
7 River Basin. Management actions should strive to help those species
8 accommodate a variety of ocean conditions by providing a wide range of life
9 history strategies. ~~The Council supports continued monitoring and evaluation~~
10 ~~of the Columbia River plume and ocean conditions, for impacts on salmonid~~
11 ~~survival. The Council also supports monitoring salmon returns and climate~~
12 ~~change impacts on in the ocean conditions in order to identify factors~~
13 ~~affecting survival in the ocean and plume. survival and to determine whether~~
14 ~~there are periods of times when survival is better in tthe plume and ocean~~
15 ~~than survival other times is better than others.~~

16 **2. Distinguish Ocean Effects from Other Effects**

17 Monitoring and evaluation actions should recognize and take into account the
18 effect of varying ocean conditions and, to the extent feasible, separate the effects
19 of ocean-related mortality from that caused in the freshwater part of the life cycle.

20
21 ~~9. Research, Monitoring, and Evaluation~~

22
23 ~~Primary strategies: 1) Identify and resolve key uncertainties for the program; 2)~~
24 ~~monitor, evaluate, and apply results; and 3) make information from this program readily~~
25 ~~available.~~

V. The Columbia River Estuary

The Columbia River estuary is an important ecological feature that is negatively affected by upriver actions and local habitat change. The storage, release, and impoundment of water changes the pattern of water flows and water temperatures below the hydroelectric dams and changes the characteristics of the estuary. While less is known about the potential for improvements in salmonid survival in the estuary and lower Columbia River than is known about the potential for improvement in other parts of the Columbia River Basin, recent scientific evidence points to the potential for substantial survival improvements that may benefit most anadromous fish populations. In 2008, ~~Recent~~ science suggests that survival improvements for habitat actions taken in the Columbia River Estuary have the potential to improve survival benefits for fall Chinook salmon by ~~nine~~ ⁹ percent and spring Chinook, sockeye, and steelhead by ~~six~~ ⁶ percent, a survival improvement possibly unequaled by tributary habitat actions.

Specific implementation of habitat and monitoring and evaluation actions in the ~~e~~Estuary will occur through the adopted ~~e~~Estuary and Lower Columbia subbasin plans. The recently completed *Columbia River Estuary ESA Recovery Plan Module for Salmon and Steelhead* ~~will also will~~ help guide actions in the ~~e~~Estuary and lower Columbia River.

A. Estuary Strategies

The Council supports strategies that protect, enhance, and restore critical habitat and spawning and rearing grounds in the estuary and lower Columbia River. Such strategies may include:

- **Habitat restoration work to reconnect ecosystem functions such as removal or lowering of dikes and levees that block access to habitat or installation of fish-friendly tide gates;**
- **Long-term effectiveness monitoring for various types of habitat restoration projects in the estuary;**
- **Continued evaluation of salmon and steelhead migration and survival rates through the mainstem hydropower dams, the lower Columbia River, the estuary, and the marine environment;**
- **Evaluation of the impact of flow regulation, dredging, and water quality on estuary-area habitat to better understand the relationship between estuary ecology and near-shore plume characteristics and salmon and steelhead productivity, abundance, and diversity;**
- **Recognition and encouragement of continued partnerships in planning, monitoring, evaluating, and implementing activities in the estuary and lower Columbia River.**

VI. Mainstem Plan

~~Introduction: The Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program~~

~~The states of the Columbia River Basin, Idaho, Montana, Oregon and Washington, formed the Northwest Power and Conservation Council, an interstate compact agency, under the authority of the Pacific Northwest Electric Power Planning and Conservation Act of 1980. The Power Act directs the Council to develop a program to protect, mitigate and enhance fish and wildlife of the Columbia River Basin affected by the development and operation of the basin's hydroelectric facilities, while also assuring the Pacific Northwest an adequate, efficient, economical and reliable power supply. The Act also directs the Council to inform the public about fish, wildlife and energy issues and to involve the public in its decision-making.~~

~~The Council's *Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program*, first adopted in 1982 and periodically revised, is the nation's largest regional effort to recover, rebuild, and mitigate impacts on fish and wildlife. As a planning, policy-making and reviewing body, the Council develops and then monitors implementation of the fish and wildlife program, which is implemented by the federal agencies that manage, operate and regulate the basin's hydroelectric facilities. These include the Bonneville Power Administration, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, the Bureau of Reclamation and the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission and its licensees.~~

~~The 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program and the Mainstem Plan~~

~~In 2000, the Council adopted a set of amendments to the fish and wildlife program to begin a complete revision of the program. In the first phase of the amendment process, the Council reorganized the program around a comprehensive framework of scientific and policy principles. The fundamental elements of the revised program are the *vision*, which describes what the program is trying to accomplish with regard to fish and wildlife and other desired benefits from the river; basinwide *biological performance objectives*, which describe in general the fish and wildlife population characteristics needed to achieve the vision; implementation *strategies*, which will guide or describe the actions needed to achieve the desired ecological conditions; and a *scientific foundation*, which links these elements and explains why the Council believes certain kinds of actions should result in desired habitat conditions and why these conditions should improve fish and wildlife populations in the desired way.~~

~~The program amendments in 2000 set the stage for subsequent phases of the program revision process, in which the Council is to adopt specific objectives and action measures for the river's mainstem and tributary subbasins, consistent with the basinwide vision, objectives and strategies in the program and its underlying scientific foundation. The Council intends to incorporate the specific objectives and measures for tributaries into the~~

1 ~~program in locally developed subbasin plans for the more than sixty subbasins of the~~
2 ~~Columbia River.~~

3
4 ~~This document comprises a coordinated plan of operations for the mainstem Columbia~~
5 ~~and Snake rivers. The Council adopted the *mainstem plan* in April 2003.~~

6
7 ~~In preparing the mainstem plan, the Council solicited recommendations from the region's~~
8 ~~state and federal fish and wildlife agencies, Indian tribes and others, as required by the~~
9 ~~Northwest Power Act. Various agencies and tribes responded, and the Council also~~
10 ~~received recommendations from other interested parties. The Council prepared a draft~~
11 ~~after reviewing the recommendations, supporting information submitted with the~~
12 ~~recommendations, and comments received on the recommendations. The Council~~
13 ~~conducted an extensive public comment period on the draft mainstem plan before~~
14 ~~finalizing these program amendments.~~

15 16 ~~Expectations for the Elements of the Mainstem Plan~~

17
18 ~~The role of the mainstem plan and the Council's expectations for it were described in the~~
19 ~~2000 Fish and Wildlife Program in the section on Basinwide Hydrosystem Strategies and~~
20 ~~in the section entitled Schedule for Further Rulemakings. The mMainstem pPlan is a~~
21 **coordinated plan of operations, habitat improvements, and monitoring and**
22 **evaluation for the mainstem Columbia and Snake rivers. It** contains specific
23 objectives and action measures for the federal operating agencies and others to implement
24 in the mainstem Columbia and Snake rivers to protect, mitigate and enhance fish and
25 wildlife affected by the development and operation of hydroelectric facilities. **It does so**
26 **consistent with the basinwide vision, objectives and strategies and the underlying**
27 **scientific foundation**, while assuring the region an adequate, efficient, economical and
28 reliable power supply. The mainstem plan includes objectives and measures relating to;
29 ~~among other matters:~~

- 30
- 31 • the protection and enhancement of mainstem habitat, including spawning, rearing,
 - 32 resting and migration areas for salmon and steelhead and resident salmonids and
 - 33 other fish;
 - 34 • system water management;
 - 35 • passage spill at mainstem dams;
 - 36 • adult and juvenile passage modifications at mainstem dams;
 - 37 • juvenile fish transportation;
 - 38 • adult survival during upstream migration through the mainstem;
 - 39 • reservoir elevations and operational requirements to protect resident fish and
 - 40 wildlife;
 - 41 • water quality conditions; and
 - 42 • research, monitoring and evaluation.

43
44 ~~The Council evaluated the mainstem plan recommendations and these program~~
45 ~~amendments for consistency with the program framework elements adopted in 2000,~~

1 | ~~including the vision, biological objectives, habitat and hydrosystem strategies, and~~
2 | ~~underlying scientific principles.~~
3 |

1 **A. The Context for the ~~A Different Mainstem Plan for a Different~~**
2 **Context**

3
4
5 **At one time the ~~In the past, the~~ Council’s fish and wildlife program included detailed**
6 **hydrosystem operations for fish and wildlife. This is no longer necessary. The federal**
7 **agencies that manage, operate and regulate the federal dams on the Columbia and**
8 **Snake rivers now have detailed plans for system operations and for each**
9 **hydroelectric facility intended to improve conditions for fish and wildlife affected by**
10 **the hydrosystem. These federal agency plans are described and reviewed largely in**
11 **biological opinions issued by ~~In December 2000,~~ NOAA Fisheries (formerly the**
12 **National Marine Fisheries Service) and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service ~~issued~~**
13 **~~biological opinions~~ for the operation of the Federal Columbia River Power System and**
14 **the Bureau of Reclamation’s projects in the Upper Snake.¹¹**

15
16
17 **The main focus of these federal plans is to benefit populations of salmon, steelhead,**
18 **bull trout and Kootenai River white sturgeon listed as threatened or endangered under**
19 **the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA). The plans also contain objectives and**
20 **actions to benefit other fish and wildlife affected by the hydrosystem, consistent with**
21 **the federal agencies’ obligations under other authorities, including obligations to**
22 **this program under the Northwest Power Act. Additional mainstem operations and**
23 **actions to benefit these species are found in the Columbia River Basin Fish Accords**
24 **executed by the federal agencies in 2008 with four Indian tribes and two states and**
25 **described in the basinwide provisions ~~above~~. Finally, operators of non-federal dams**
26 **on the mainstem Columbia and Snake are implementing, or will soon implement,**
27 **increasingly detailed plans to benefit Columbia and Snake fish and wildlife, agreed**
28 **upon through the regulatory and relicensing processes at the Federal Energy**
29 **Regulatory Commission.**

30
31 **-The hydrosystem measures in these plans and opinions ~~run to~~ contain hundreds of pages**
32 **of detail and hundreds of measures on system configuration, river flows, reservoir**
33 **management, passage improvements, spill, juvenile transportation, predator management**
34 **and more. These measures are built on foundations developed in the Council’s program**
35 **over the last 280 years. In turn, the Council’s Mainstem Plan is now built on**

¹¹ The relevant biological opinions include NOAA Fisheries, *Consultation on Remand and Biological Opinion for Operation of the Federal Columbia River Power System, 11 Bureau of Reclamation Projects in the Columbia Basin and ESA Section 10(a)(1)(A) Permit for Juvenile Fish Transportation Program* (May 2008); NOAA Fisheries, *Consultation and Biological Opinion for the Operation and Maintenance of 10 U.S. Bureau of Reclamation Projects and 2 Related Actions in the Upper Snake River Basin above Brownlee Reservoir* (May 2008); U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, *Biological Opinion regarding the effects of Libby Dam operations on the Kootenai River White Sturgeon, Bull Trout and Kootenai Sturgeon Critical Habitat* (February 2006); U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, *Biological Opinion: Effects to Listed Species from Operations of the Federal Columbia River Power System* (December 2000). Various ESA recovery plans and draft recovery plans across the basin incorporate these hydrosystem objectives and measures as well.

1 recognizing these plans and biological opinions as containing the baseline objectives
2 and measures for the mainstem portion of the Council's fish and wildlife program.
3

4 **In this context, the purpose of the Mainstem Plan is:**

- 5 • to set forth a systematic set of biological objectives, habitat considerations,
6 principles and strategies to protect, mitigate and enhance all the fish and
7 wildlife of the Columbia River Basin affected by the development, operation
8 and management of the hydrosystem, whether listed or not;
9
- 10 • to recognize the objectives and measures already committed to by the federal
11 agencies;
12
- 13 • to identify additional objectives and measures as necessary to protect and
14 improve conditions for fish and wildlife in the mainstem that are not listed
15 under the Endangered Species Act and thus not the systematic focus of the
16 current federal and non-federal plans;
17
- 18 • to identify power system impacts and optimum strategies to improve both the
19 power supply and the conditions for fish and wildlife;
20
- 21 • to emphasize the need for rigorous monitoring and evaluation of these
22 measures and for public reporting and accountability; and
23
- 24 • to describe broader planning considerations consistent with a long-term
25 program for protection and mitigation beyond the immediate requirements
26 of the ESA.
27

28 ~~In developing this mainstem plan, the Council asked for recommendations addressing, in~~
29 ~~part, how the plan should relate to the biological opinions on hydrosystem operations.~~
30 ~~The relevant recommendations received can be loosely grouped into four categories:~~
31

- 32 ~~• recommendations that the Council adopt a mainstem plan consistent with the objectives~~
33 ~~and measures in the biological opinions;~~
34
- 35 ~~• recommendations that concluded the biological opinions do not prescribe sufficient~~
36 ~~flow, spill and passage operations to benefit listed fish, and so the Council should adopt~~
37 ~~additional measures to that end;~~
38
- 39 ~~• recommendations that concluded the biological opinions exceeded what was necessary~~
40 ~~to benefit listed fish, to the detriment of the power supply and other uses of the river, and~~
41 ~~so the Council should adopt a mainstem plan with sealed back flow and spill operations~~
42 ~~that are, in the view of those making the recommendations, more biologically and~~
43 ~~economically efficient in how the limited resources of the region are applied; and~~
44
- 45 ~~• recommendations that concluded the operations specified in the biological opinions are~~
46 ~~not sufficient to protect, enhance or mitigate for the adverse effects of the hydrosystem~~

1 on fish and wildlife not listed for protection under the Endangered Species Act, and may
2 be especially adverse to resident fish (listed and non-listed), and so the Council should
3 adopt objectives and measures for that purpose that would be either supplemental to, or in
4 some cases in conflict with, current implementation approaches to biological opinion
5 operations.

6
7 The Council considered and drew from recommendations in all four categories in
8 developing this mainstem plan. In general, however, two overriding concerns motivated
9 the Council in deciding what objectives and measures to include in the plan:

10
11 •The mainstem plan includes a set of habitat considerations, objectives, principles and
12 measures intended to protect, mitigate and enhance all the fish and wildlife of the
13 Columbia River Basin affected by the development, operation and management of the
14 hydrosystem, whether listed or not, as required of the Council by the Power Act.
15 Objectives, actions and operations intended to protect, enhance and mitigate for the
16 effects of the hydrosystem on species other than those listed as threatened or endangered
17 may require federal agency flexibility or changes in the implementation of the biological
18 opinions, as described below.

19
20 •Scientific and policy uncertainty continues to plague a number of mainstem actions
21 intended to benefit anadromous fish, leading to an inability to measure the extent of the
22 benefits gained, and to great differences of opinion as to the value of continuing these
23 actions. Moreover, some of these actions have adverse impacts on resident fish and high
24 costs to the power system. The mainstem plan includes provisions for how to improve the
25 way the region engages in fish and wildlife research, power system operations,
26 monitoring and evaluation for the mainstem, and how and what decisions are made on the
27 basis of that information. This includes: 1) describing an approach and a set of factors for
28 prioritizing research; 2) recommending specific priorities for mainstem research; and 3)
29 suggesting how to better integrate research, monitoring and evaluation results into
30 decisions about mainstem actions and power system operations in the context of the
31 Columbia basin as a whole. The Council's goal is to provide recommendations to the
32 federal hydrosystem operating agencies and fish and wildlife agencies for more
33 biologically effective spill, flow and other mainstem operations and actions at the
34 minimum economic cost. The Council understands the biological opinions have sufficient
35 flexibility in implementation to accommodate recommendations of this type; that is, the
36 biological opinions were adopted with the recognition that as new scientific information
37 is developed, actions called for in the opinions could and, where found appropriate,
38 would be changed.

39
40 The Council reviewed comments on the proposed vision, objectives, and strategies in the
41 draft mainstem plan and then decided, consistent with the review procedures and
42 standards in the Power Act, on the most appropriate mainstem vision, objectives, and
43 strategies for both listed and non-listed species.

44
45 Another difference between this and past Council mainstem programs concerns the
46 region's power supply requirements. The Power Act requires the Council to adopt a fish

1 and wildlife program that not only protects, mitigates and enhances fish and wildlife but
2 also assures that the region will continue to enjoy an adequate, efficient, economical and
3 reliable power supply. The Council evaluated: 1) current hydrosystem operations; 2) the
4 recommendations for mainstem amendments; and 3) the October 2002 draft mainstem
5 amendments to ensure that the adopted objectives and measures for mainstem
6 hydrosystem operations meet the fish and wildlife requirements of the Power Act and are
7 consistent with its power supply obligations. The Council also reviewed the latest
8 scientific information and comments on the effectiveness of fish and wildlife strategies to
9 increase survival of specific populations.

10
11 Energy systems, markets and policy have changed radically since the last revision of the
12 fish and wildlife program in the mid-1990s. Federal hydrosystem operations in 2001
13 brought a concrete example of a problem that the Council had seen developing over the
14 last half decade—the electricity demands placed on the federal hydrosystem were
15 increasingly greater than what the federal system could produce in a year of historically
16 low runoff and river levels. Yet the dynamics of regional and west coast energy
17 developments prevented the Bonneville Power Administration from acquiring new, long-
18 term resources that could have closed the gap. Problems with West Coast power markets
19 in 2000 and 2001 prevented Bonneville from being able to make up the energy deficit in
20 those markets, leading to a situation in 2001 in which the federal agencies were forced to
21 curtail regional load and reduce system operations intended to benefit fish and wildlife in
22 order to maintain the reliability of the region's power system. Even with significant
23 changes to the hydropower operations specified for fish, the system still produced
24 inadequate energy to meet the demands of the region. This forced many of the region's
25 utilities to curtail loads while also spending large sums to purchase power.

26
27 For these reasons, the analysis of the adequacy, efficiency, economics and reliability of
28 the region's power supply that accompanies this mainstem plan includes consideration of
29 the current status of the region's power system. The Council's conclusion is that the
30 region's power system should be adequate and reliable for the next few years, due to the
31 development of new power supplies, reductions in demand, and loss of loads that have
32 occurred since early 2001. The objectives and measures to protect, mitigate and enhance
33 fish and wildlife included in this mainstem plan do not affect that conclusion. The
34 analysis also concludes, however, that the region faces the possibility in later years of
35 spiraling back into the power supply problems seen in 2001 unless measures are taken to
36 ensure that new resources are added to the regional power supply in a more certain
37 fashion. The analysis suggests possible actions by the federal agencies and others in the
38 region to ensure that the federal system provides the specified operations for fish and
39 wildlife and meets the electricity demands in most, if not all, low-water years. The
40 Council is reviewing and revising its 20-year power plan as called for by the Northwest
41 Power Act. The power plan will address the region's power supply and reliability issues
42 in more detail.

1 **B. Vision of the Mainstem Plan**

2
3 ~~The long-term vision of the Council’s 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program is of a Columbia~~
4 ~~River Basin ecosystem that sustains abundant, productive and diverse communities of~~
5 ~~fish and wildlife, mitigating across the basin for the adverse effects to fish and wildlife~~
6 ~~caused by the development and operation of the hydrosystem and providing the benefits~~
7 ~~from fish and wildlife valued by the people of the region. This ecosystem provides~~
8 ~~abundant opportunities for tribal and treaty right harvest and for non-tribal harvest of fish~~
9 ~~and wildlife, and for the recovery of fish and wildlife affected by the operation of the~~
10 ~~hydrosystem. This program is to be “habitat-based.” Wherever feasible, the program~~
11 ~~vision is to be accomplished by protecting and restoring the natural ecological functions,~~
12 ~~habitats and biological diversity of the Columbia River Basin. Where this is not feasible,~~
13 ~~other methods that are compatible with naturally reproducing fish and wildlife~~
14 ~~populations will be used. Where impacts have irrevocably changed the ecosystem, the~~
15 ~~program will protect and enhance the habitat and species assemblages compatible with~~
16 ~~the altered ecosystem. Actions taken under the program will also provide conditions that~~
17 ~~meet water quality standards under the Clean Water Act. They must also be cost effective~~
18 ~~and not put at risk the region’s adequate, efficient, economical and reliable power supply.~~

19
20 The vision for the mainstem plan is consistent with the program’s **broader basinwide**
21 ~~vision. set out above.~~ Hydrosystem operations, fish passage efforts, habitat improvement
22 investments and other actions in the mainstem should be directed toward **optimizing**
23 **survival through the mainstem, largely by** protecting, enhancing, restoring and
24 connecting¹² natural river processes and habitats, especially spawning, rearing, resting
25 and migration habitats for salmon, steelhead, sturgeon and important resident fish
26 populations. This will allow for abundant, productive and diverse fish and wildlife
27 populations.

28
29 The vision includes providing conditions within the hydrosystem for adult and juvenile
30 fish that: 1) most closely approximate natural physical and biological conditions; 2)
31 support the expression of life history diversity; 3) allow for adequate levels of mainstem
32 survival to support fish population recovery in the subbasins; and 4) ensure that water

¹² “Restore” as used in the mainstem plan means to take an action in a particular area that currently has no habitat value for spawning or rearing or other desired population condition (because, for example, the area has been blocked inundated or dewatered at an inopportune time), so that the area will have value for that purpose. It does not mean to re-establish the conditions that existed at any particular point in time, including the time before non-Indian settlement and development of the Columbia basin.

“Enhance,” by contrast, when referring to habitat conditions, means to take an action in an area that currently has some value for spawning or rearing or other desired condition so as to increase that value.

“Connecting” habitat becomes important when a migrating population has areas of productive habitat that it cannot use to full advantage (or use at all) because the habitat is inaccessible to the population or because the areas in between productive habitat are not productive without improvements. It also does not mean or imply a Council position in support of the breaching of dams in the mainstem. **Throughout the provisions of these mainstem amendments, the Council’s position is consistent with the position of NOAA Fisheries’ 2008 FCRPS Biological Opinion with reference to breaching of the federal dams on the lower Snake River or other mainstem dams.**

1 management operations are optimized to meet the needs of anadromous and resident fish
2 species, including those in upstream storage reservoirs, with the least cost so that actions
3 taken maximize benefits to all species while ensuring an adequate, efficient, economical
4 and reliable power supply.

5
6 Any system changes needed to achieve these goals must be implemented in such a way
7 and over a sufficient time period to allow the region to make whatever power system
8 adaptations are needed, if any, to maintain an adequate, efficient, economical and reliable
9 power supply. **Actions taken under the program will also provide conditions that**
10 **should meet water quality standards under the Clean Water Act.**

1 | **C. Biological Objectives**

2 | **1. Overarching Objectives and Priorities For the Mainstem**

3 |
4 | The biological objectives stated here for the mainstem plan are ~~intended to be~~
5 | based on, and consistent with, the biological objectives ~~stated~~ in the **basinwide**
6 | **provisions of the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program**. These biological
7 | objectives and accompanying operational strategies are designed to improve the
8 | life-cycle survival of important populations of listed and unlisted salmon,
9 | steelhead, **lamprey**, resident fish, and wildlife. The Council’s goal is to apply the
10 | available resources in the most effective way possible to achieve protection,
11 | mitigation, recovery and delisting of threatened and endangered species in the
12 | shortest possible time. This demands that the Council set clear priorities for
13 | resource expenditures to protect, mitigate, and enhance fish and wildlife
14 | populations to assure that fish and wildlife benefits are achieved at the least cost
15 | to the region’s financial and water resources.

16 |
17 | One of the overarching **biological** objectives for the program is the recovery of
18 | ESA-listed anadromous and resident fish affected by development and operation
19 | of the hydrosystem. Federal hydrosystem operations to benefit fish now are
20 | focused on listed populations through **the objectives in NOAA Fisheries’ the**
21 | **2008 Biological Opinions on the Operation of the Federal Columbia River**
22 | **Power System and on the Bureau of Reclamation’s Upper Snake projects**
23 | ~~from NOAA Fisheries~~ for salmon and steelhead and **in** the U.S. Fish and Wildlife
24 | Service’s **biological opinions in 2000 and 2006 on FCRPS operations**
25 | ~~affecting~~ **Kootenai River** white sturgeon and bull trout (*see footnote 8*).
26 | Achieving these biological performance standards for listed species ~~as stated~~
27 | **forth** in the biological opinions is a key biological objective of the Council’s
28 | program and this mainstem plan.

29 |
30 | Under the Northwest Power Act, however, the Council has an obligation to
31 | protect, mitigate and enhance all the fish and wildlife of the Columbia Basin
32 | affected by the development, operation and management of the hydrosystem.
33 | Concern over the listed populations is only one part of the Council’s broader
34 | mandate. ~~And so Therefore,~~ a goal of the **Council’s** program, as ~~also stated~~
35 | **forth** in the ~~overarching objectives of the~~ **program’s vision statement framework**,
36 | is to provide habitat conditions that sustain abundant, productive, and diverse fish
37 | and wildlife populations that support the recovery of listed species and abundant
38 | opportunities for tribal trust and treaty-right harvest and non-tribal harvest.

39 |
40 | In addition, the science relating to the rebuilding of Pacific salmon, ~~as~~
41 | ~~incorporated into the objectives and habitat strategies in the 2000 Fish and~~
42 | ~~wildlife program~~, indicates that success in protecting and enhancing abundant and
43 | diverse naturally spawning populations of salmon and steelhead and other native
44 | fish requires an emphasis on protecting, enhancing, connecting, and restoring
45 | habitats and populations that are relatively productive. This is a priority for

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

actions that should be equal to protecting migration and spawning conditions for ESA-listed populations. This priority includes, for example, protecting and improving mainstem migration conditions for important non-listed tributary populations in the middle part of the river. These include, for example, spring chinook in the John Day and Deschutes rivers. Also, historically the most productive populations in the Columbia system were those that spawned in the mainstem or the lower parts of the tributaries, as described in the **basinwide habitat objectives and strategies above, in the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program,** and that have been either extirpated (e.g., those that spawned in the mainstem above Chief Joseph Dam or in the area now inundated by John Day Dam) or remain relatively productive (e.g., Hanford Reach fall chinook). Accordingly, this plan emphasizes protecting and restoring mainstem spawning and rearing habitats and populations. These general objectives for the mainstem are consistent with, and incorporate, the basinwide vision, biological objectives, and the habitat and hydrosystem strategies ~~in the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program.~~

1 | **2. Specific Objectives and Performance Standards for Habitat**
2 | **Characteristics and for Population Performance**

3 | **a. Mainstem habitat conditions**

- 4 | • Identify and protect habitat areas and ecological functions that are
5 | relatively productive for spawning, resting, rearing, and migrating
6 | salmon and steelhead in the mainstem. This includes, among other
7 | things, protecting the Hanford Reach fall chinook habitat by
8 | determining and providing appropriate spawning and rearing flows. In
9 | addition, where feasible, restore and enhance habitats and ecological
10 | functions that connect to ~~the~~ protected productive areas to support the
11 | expansion of productive populations and to connect weaker and
12 | stronger populations, so as to restore more natural population
13 | structures.
- 14 |
- 15 | • Protect, enhance, restore and connect freshwater habitat in the
16 | mainstem for the life history stages of naturally spawning anadromous
17 | and resident salmonids. Protect and enhance ecological connectivity
18 | between aquatic areas, riparian zones, floodplains and uplands in the
19 | mainstem.
- 20 | ☐ Enhance the connections between the mainstem sections of the
21 | Columbia and Snake rivers and their floodplains, side channels
22 | and riparian zones.
- 23 | ☐ Manage mainstem riparian areas to protect aquatic conditions
24 | and form a transition to floodplain terrestrial areas and side
25 | channels.
- 26 | ☐ Identify, protect, enhance and restore the functions of alluvial
27 | river reaches in the mainstem.
- 28 | ☐ Where feasible, reconnect protected and enhanced tributary
29 | habitats to protected and enhanced mainstem habitats,
30 | especially in the area of productive mainstem populations.
- 31 |
- 32 | • Allow for biological diversity to increase among and within
33 | populations and species to increase ecological resilience to
34 | environmental variability.
- 35 | ○ Expand the complexity and range of mainstem habitats to
36 | allow for greater life history and species diversity.
- 37 | ○ Manage human activities in the mainstem, such as fish passage
38 | at mainstem dams, fish transportation and harvest, to minimize
39 | artificial selection or limitation of life history traits.
- 40 |
- 41 | • Increase the amount of spawning habitat for fall chinook core
42 | populations in the lower and mid-Columbia area and in the lower
43 | Snake area. ~~The Council acknowledges the recommendation from the~~
44 | ~~four tribes of the Columbia River Inter-Tribal Fish Commission that~~

1 | the federal agencies act to provide 9,000 additional acres of spawning
2 | habitat for Snake River fall chinook and 40 additional miles of fluvial
3 | spawning habitat for mid-Columbia fall chinook core populations,
4 | derived at least in part from the Independent Scientific Group's Return
5 | to the River report (1996 and 2000). However, the Council does not
6 | adopt at this time these or any other numerical targets for increased fall
7 | chinook spawning habitat. Instead, the Council will consult with the
8 | state and federal fish and wildlife agencies, tribes, federal operating
9 | agencies, the Independent Scientific Advisory Board and the
10 | Independent Economic Advisory Board to evaluate the scientific
11 | soundness, achievability, and implications of the tribes' recommended
12 | targets, as well as other reasonable alternatives, and then in a public
13 | review process will consider adoption of a set of numerical objectives
14 | for additional mainstem spawning habitat.

- 16 | • Where feasible, manage the hydrosystem **to optimize survival,**
17 | **including by reestablishing** ~~so that~~ patterns of flow **that** more closely
18 | approximate natural hydrographic patterns. Ensure that any changes in
19 | water management are premised upon, and proportionate to,
20 | scientifically demonstrated fish and wildlife benefits. Examples of
21 | management actions or limitations consistent with this objective
22 | include:
 - 23 | ○ Attempt to provide natural spring freshets below the storage
24 | projects, within flood control constraints.
 - 25 | ○ Minimize fluctuations in flows out of the storage reservoirs
26 | over an extended period of the summer and fall. To the extent
27 | this conflicts with use of the hydrosystem for load following,
28 | system operators should balance equitably the biological
29 | requirements of fish with power supply requirements of the
30 | region.
 - 31 | ○ Apply rules of operation for all the storage projects, such as the
32 | Integrated Rule Curves developed by the Montana Department
33 | of Fish, Wildlife and Parks for Libby and Hungry Horse dams,
34 | so that drawdown and refill are based substantially on local
35 | inflows, and so that the reservoirs, in concert, can shape water
36 | releases to benefit fish in and immediately below reservoirs
37 | and then, as the water travels downstream, benefit anadromous
38 | fish.
 - 39 | ○ Operations based solely on efforts to achieve biological
40 | opinion flow targets in the lower Columbia river ~~will~~ adversely
41 | affect resident fish and may fail to benefit anadromous fish if
42 | they do not take into account reasonable storage project
43 | operations.
 - 44 | ○ Operations should ~~attempt to~~ meet the requirements of both
45 | resident and anadromous fish.

- The amount of flow augmentation and the release schedule from storage reservoirs should be based on the best available science for each target species (resident or anadromous) and weighted for the greatest benefit to all species.

- Identify, protect, enhance, restore, and connect ecosystem functions in the Columbia River estuary and nearshore ocean discharge plume as affected by actions within the Columbia River mainstem. Evaluate flow regulation and changes to estuary-area habitat and biological diversity to better understand the relationship between estuary ecology and near-shore plume characteristics and the productivity, abundance, and diversity of salmon and steelhead populations.
- Where feasible, pursue restoration of anadromous fish in mainstem areas blocked by dams. Where this is not feasible, other measures will be used to protect, mitigate, and enhance related habitat and species assemblages. Under Section 4(h)(11)(A)(ii) of the Northwest Power Act, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission has an obligation to take the Council’s program, including this provision, into account at each relevant stage of decision-making to the fullest extent practicable as it exercises its responsibilities. This includes decisions on whether to license or re-license a non-federal hydroproject on the Columbia and Snake mainstem. If, after fulfilling this legal obligation, FERC decides not to require reintroduction of anadromous fish into an area blocked by a particular hydroproject, actions to enhance habitat and species assemblages that exist above the blockages should be used in mitigation.

b. Migration and passage conditions for anadromous fish

- **Improve the survival and production of anadromous fish in the mainstem by enhancing the inriver migration, habitat, and water-quality conditions consistent with the biological objectives of this program and with the efforts to meet ESA requirements in the FCRPS Biological Opinion and state and federal water-quality standards under the Clean Water Act.**
- The NOAA Fisheries 2008 FCRPS Biological Opinion includes hydrosystem survival performance standards for inriver passage of affected life stages of ESA-listed salmon and steelhead through the eight federal dams in the lower Columbia and lower Snake rivers (Table 9-2-3). The program adopts these objectives. Achieve these objectives at the minimum economic cost.
- The Council will consult with state and federal fish and wildlife agencies and tribes, the Independent Scientific Advisory Board, and

1 federal operating agencies to determine the possibility of adopting
2 hydrosystem survival performance standards for non-listed populations
3 of anadromous fish, **including lamprey. On an interim basis, the**
4 **project-by-project survival performance standards also apply for**
5 **inriver passage of non-listed salmon and steelhead that migrate**
6 **through the system.**
7

- 8 • Maximize spillway survival by selecting the most biologically
9 effective level of spillway discharge at each project while not
10 exceeding interim gas supersaturation standards.¹³ Balance spillway
11 survival probabilities against spillway passage efficiency and the
12 efficiency and probabilities of other passage routes in order to
13 determine the passage methods, including spill ~~volumes, that~~**volumes**
14 **that** maximize survival of fish passing the dam and minimize fall-back
15 and other effects on adult salmon.

- 16 • Improve adult fish migration survival through the system.

17 ~~• Meet state and federal water quality standards under the Clean Water Act.~~
18

- 19 ~~• As an interim objective, c~~Contribute to achieving **desired** smolt-to-adult
20 survival rates (SARs) **described in the basinwide biological**
21 **objectives** in the 2–6 percent range (minimum 2 percent; average 4
22 percent) for listed Snake River and upper Columbia salmon and
23 steelhead. ~~The Council will consult with state and federal fish and~~
24 ~~wildlife agencies and tribes, the Independent Scientific Advisory~~
25 ~~Board, and federal operating agencies to evaluate the scientific~~
26 ~~soundness and achievability of, and impact of ocean conditions on,~~
27 ~~these smolt-to-adult survival rate objectives. Then, in a public review~~
28 ~~process, the Council either will confirm these smolt-to-adult survival~~
29 ~~rates as program objectives or revise to different objectives. At the~~
30 ~~same time, the Council will investigate the possibility of developing~~
31 ~~smolt-to-adult survival rate objectives for other populations.~~
32

- 33 •
34
35

¹³ Under current system operations for migrating anadromous fish, including under ~~2000 Bb~~ biological ~~O~~pinion operations, the federal operating agencies must secure ~~a~~ waivers **from Oregon** to the existing water quality standards to allow for spill operations that will result in total dissolved gas supersaturation levels of up to 120 percent **in tailraces and 115 percent in forebays. These standards are incorporated into Washington’s water quality standards.** The Council **continues to** considers current operations as well as any other specific spill operations included in these amendments to be “interim” while the Council works with the region to determine the most biologically effective level of spillway discharge at each project and for the system as a whole.

1 **c. Resident Fish/ and Wildlife**

- 2 • **Improve the survival and production of resident fish in the**
3 **mainstem by enhancing the inriver migration, habitat, and water-**
4 **quality conditions consistent with the biological objectives of this**
5 **program, ESA requirements and state and federal water-quality**
6 **standards under the Clean Water Act.**
- 7
- 8 • Provide conditions that support the needs of resident fish species in
9 upstream reservoirs and river reaches, as well as the needs of
10 anadromous and resident species in the lower parts of the mainstem.
- 11
- 12 • In accordance with Section 4(h)(11)(A) of the 1980 Power Act, and
13 the Council’s primary strategy for hydrosystem fish passage and
14 operations, ~~under the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program, the~~
15 ~~Administrator of the Bonneville Power Administration, Bonneville~~
16 and **the** other federal agencies responsible for managing, operating or
17 regulating any federal or non-federal hydroelectric facility for purpose
18 of flow or spill advantages to ESA-listed species shall assure, in
19 consultation with the Secretary of the Interior and the Administrator of
20 NOAA Fisheries, together with state fish and wildlife agencies and
21 appropriate Indian tribes, that flow and spill operations are optimized
22 to produce the greatest biological benefits with the least adverse
23 effects on resident fish.
- 24
- 25 • Enhance the abundance and productivity of white sturgeon in the
26 mainstem in order to rebuild and sustain naturally produced
27 populations of sturgeon and sustain an annual harvest of sturgeon.
28 Operate the hydropower system to maximize spawning and rearing
29 success of white sturgeon in reservoirs, while operating in concert with
30 the needs of salmonids. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service’s 2000
31 **and 2006 Biological Opinions** concerning hydrosystem operations
32 that affect listed Kootenai River white sturgeon includes specific
33 objectives for that species, incorporated here. ~~The water management~~
34 ~~strategies in this mainstem plan (below) include a sturgeon operation~~
35 ~~strategy that is a refinement of the flow strategy in the Fish and~~
36 ~~Wildlife Service’s Biological Opinion. The Council’s strategy is~~
37 ~~intended to be a more effective operation for achieving the objectives~~
38 ~~in the opinion and in this program.~~
- 39
- 40 • Provide mainstem conditions that help to protect and enhance bull
41 trout habitat and thus help to ~~restore~~**enhance** the abundance and
42 productivity of bull trout populations **that use the mainstem as they**
43 **migrate into and out of tributary streams.** The U.S. Fish and
44 Wildlife Service’s 2000 **and 2006 Biological Opinions** concerning
45 hydrosystem operations that affect listed bull trout populations
46 includes objectives for that species, which are adopted here.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29

- Contribute to providing the conditions necessary to restore populations of native fish and wildlife in the areas above and below Hungry Horse and Libby dams to self-sustaining levels capable of supporting harvest. This includes protecting, restoring, and enhancing reservoir, riparian, and wetland habitats above and below Hungry Horse and Libby dams to meet the goals set forth in the management and mitigation plans and the recommendations of the Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks and the Confederated Salish and Kootenai Tribes. As part of this objective, 1) improve the seasonal pattern and stability of river discharges and reservoir conditions; 2) restore in-channel habitat structure, function and complexity; 3) restore riparian and wetland habitats and floodplain function; and 4) maintain water temperatures within the tolerance range of native fish species.
- Contribute to providing the conditions necessary to protect spawning and rearing habitat for fish in, and adjacent to, Lake Roosevelt to build fish populations to levels capable of supporting harvest consistent with the goals set forth in the management and mitigation plans and the recommendations of the Spokane and Colville Tribes.
- As part of implementing the wildlife strategies and achieving the wildlife objectives **in** the **basinwide provisions above 2000 Program**, improve survival and production of wildlife species in the mainstem affected by the development, operation, and management of the hydrosystem by reducing limiting factors to wildlife in the mainstem and improving riverine and riparian mainstem habitat conditions for these species.

D. Mainstem Strategies

1. Overarching Strategies

- The strategies stated here for the mainstem plan are based on, and consistent with, the ~~general~~ basinwide objectives and habitat and hydrosystem strategies stated ~~above~~ in the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program.

~~• All of the strategies in this mainstem plan will cease to have effect seven years after the effective date of these program amendments.~~

- All decisions on actions that affect, or are intended to benefit, fish and wildlife in the mainstem Columbia and Snake Rivers — whether embedded in long-range plans, annual plans, or in-season management, and whether concerning water management or passage or reservoir operations — should reflect, or be based on, the following general strategies:
 - **Protect wild fish, ensuring adequate survival, escapement and habitat conditions.**
 - Protect the habitat areas and ecological functions that are at present relatively productive for the life stages of the species important to the biological objectives of this program, including for spawning, resting, rearing, and migration of salmon and steelhead and resident fish. Enhance and restore habitats and ecological functions that connect to ~~the~~ protected areas.
 - **Restore habitat needed by populations at risk of extinction. In particular, protect and improve habitat conditions in areas that are relatively productive for these populations, and then expand adjacent habitats that improve production.**
 - Protect biological diversity by benefiting the range of species, stocks, and life-history types in the river.
 - Provide conditions that best fit those natural behavior patterns and river processes that most closely approximate the physical and biological conditions needed by the relevant species.
 - With regard to hatchery populations of salmon and steelhead, prioritize mainstem protection and support to those hatchery populations that provide the most significant contribution to the rebuilding of naturally spawning populations in areas of program habitat investments, or that provide the most significant contributions to harvest while ensuring the least detrimental impacts on the survival of native fish species.
 - Optimize actions to produce the greatest biological benefits for targeted species with the least cost, and the least adverse effects on other species, while ensuring an adequate, efficient, economical and reliable power supply.
- ~~In December 2000,~~ NOAA Fisheries and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service **have** adopted biological opinions for the operation of the Federal Columbia

1 River Power System for the benefit of populations of salmon, steelhead, bull
2 trout and Kootenai white sturgeon listed as threatened or endangered under
3 the Endangered Species Act. The measures in these opinions represent the
4 recommendations of the federal fish and wildlife agencies with jurisdiction
5 over the operational needs of these listed species. The Council accepts these
6 measures as part of the fish and wildlife program for the near term. However,
7 many of the biological opinions' measures must be subject to systematic and
8 rigorous monitoring and evaluation, as described below and in the more
9 specific strategies, to determine if the measures have the biological benefits
10 expected and represent the most cost-effective actions to achieve these
11 benefits. Based on these evaluations, the Council may recommend to the
12 federal operating and fish and wildlife agencies operations that differ from
13 those in the biological opinions if the Council concludes the different
14 operations provide the same or greater benefits to listed fish and wildlife than
15 current operations at a lower cost. The Council is confident that changes in
16 operations of this nature can be made consistent with the flexibility built into
17 the biological opinions.

- 18
19 • The ~~2000 NMFS and USFWS~~ biological opinions' operations may not be
20 optimal when the needs of fish and wildlife other than listed species are
21 taken into account. Based on the vision, the biological objectives, and the
22 overarching strategies stated earlier, the Council is adopting water
23 management and other specific strategies to benefit all fish and wildlife
24 affected by the hydrosystem, not just listed species. Where the strategies
25 intended to benefit non-listed species appear to conflict with the biological
26 opinions, the Council does not mean that the federal operating agencies
27 should act contrary to the biological opinions in order to implement
28 strategies in this program. The Council intends instead that the federal
29 operating agencies make every effort practicable to use the operational
30 flexibility in the biological opinions to meet the biological opinion
31 requirements and implement the other strategies in the Council's program.
32 The exception is where the Council calls for explicit scientific testing of a
33 particular operation in the biological opinions. The Council is confident
34 these changes also can be made consistent with the flexibility built into the
35 biological opinions without adverse effects on listed species and will lead to
36 a more broad-based, sustainable, and cost-effective protection and recovery
37 of fish and wildlife in the Columbia Basin. The Council ~~calls on~~**expects** the
38 federal operating agencies and fish and wildlife agencies to consult with the
39 Council, states, and tribes on the implementation of these strategies.

- 40
41 • The Council recognizes the **continuing** need to test certain assumptions and
42 uncertainties in the biological opinions as they relate to spill, flow
43 augmentation, reservoir drafting, predator control, and harvest. The Council
44 supports the development of tests and experiments for the hydrosystem even
45 where some may require temporary departures from ~~current biological~~
46 ~~opinion~~**operations set forth in current biological opinions**. These

1 | experiments will focus on areas where the quantitative benefits from **the**
2 | biological opinions’ operations require additional understanding or
3 | verification, or where benefits to non-listed species from varied operations
4 | may be significant without adverse impacts on listed species, or both. This
5 | approach is consistent with the biological opinions, which allow considerable
6 | flexibility to conduct necessary tests. In the strategies, the Council specifies
7 | what tests need to occur and why. In particular, the Council emphasizes the
8 | need for the following types of testing:
9 |

- 10 | ○ Determine more precisely the relationship between fish survival and
- 11 | various levels of spill at the individual dams and for the system.
- 12 | ○ Implement and test new spill technologies such as removable spillway
- 13 | weirs.
- 14 | ○ Evaluate turbine operations at the different dams to determine optimum
- 15 | fish survival through the turbines.
- 16 | ○ Evaluate the benefits of incremental flow augmentation and determine the
- 17 | mechanisms for flow/survival relationships on the Columbia and Snake
- 18 | rivers.
- 19 | ○ Measure the effects of steady June through September outflows from
- 20 | Libby and Hungry Horse dams in Montana.
- 21 | ~~○ Identify the effects of shifting summer flows later in the summer.~~
- 22 | ○ Evaluate and document the impact of predation in the mainstem in terms
- 23 | of numbers of listed fish taken, and estimated impact on smolt-to-adult
- 24 | return ratios.
- 25 | ○ Evaluate and document the impact of harvest operations in terms of
- 26 | numbers of ESA-listed fish taken and estimated impact on smolt-to-adult
- 27 | return ratios.
- 28 | ○ Test other uncertainties proposed by independent science panels and fish
- 29 | and wildlife managers summarized in this program and in the basinwide
- 30 | research plan.

31 |
32 | There are several purposes for these tests. First and foremost is to determine
33 | the type of operation that provides the best benefits for enhancing listed and
34 | non-listed fish populations over the long term. In many cases, if it were
35 | better understood why certain operations were beneficial to fish it would be
36 | possible to adjust the operations to provide better survival. For example, the
37 | benefits of flow augmentation in the Snake River may be related to travel
38 | time, turbidity, temperature or reservoir fluctuations. Whatever the reason,
39 | operations could be made more effective if these mechanisms were better
40 | understood.

41 |
42 | Another purpose of these tests is to better quantify the benefits of the
43 | operations so that choices can be made to assure that the same survival
44 | benefits are achieved through the lowest-cost operation. This is largely the
45 | purpose behind many of the spill tests and tests involving removable
46 | spillway weirs. Early results appear to show that removable spillway weirs

1 can provide the same benefits as baseline spill but use one-tenth of the water.
2 This constitutes a considerable savings in terms of hydropower generation.

3
4 Finally, there are some operations where the benefits need to be more clearly
5 demonstrated. Only through controlled experiments can we reach a
6 conclusion as to the merits of continuing these operations. Recent scientific
7 reports call into question several of these operations, especially active
8 management of the storage projects to provide flow augmentation.

9
10 It should be emphasized that this approach represents more than passive
11 observation. It includes the option of implementing large-scale field tests of
12 hypotheses that will sometimes require changes in hydrosystem operations.
13 In some cases, there may be risks associated with conducting the experiment,
14 but these risks must be weighed against the risks of continuing operations
15 without accurate information and against the potential risks to other fish
16 species. In implementing large-scale field tests, or any other hydrosystem
17 tests, the Council recognizes that water used from Columbia River and Snake
18 River storage reservoirs, or from tributary streams within the Columbia
19 River Basin, will be obtained through federal water rights where they exist,
20 or through the individual states where such water may be made available in
21 accordance with state water law.

22
23 The Council is prepared to take steps necessary to properly design
24 experiments and ensure that they are implemented. In some cases this may
25 require the Council to work with fish and wildlife agencies and tribes to
26 establish project teams that can develop and oversee appropriate tests while
27 assuring opportunities for public input.

28
29 **These and other monitoring and evaluation strategies are described in**
30 **the mainstem strategies below and in the basinwide monitoring and**
31 **evaluation strategies above.** The Council ~~expects~~^{calls on} NOAA Fisheries
32 and the ~~U.S. United States~~ Fish and Wildlife Service to exercise the
33 flexibility within the biological opinions to implement these tests. We also
34 encourage NOAA Fisheries and U.S. **Fish and Wildlife Service** to make
35 changes in the biological opinions when these scientific reviews and tests are
36 completed and the results provide compelling reasons for change.

1 **2. Strategies in Specific Areas**

2 **a. Mainstem habitat**

3 Through system operations and **continued** investments in mainstem
4 habitat improvements, increase the extent, diversity, complexity, and
5 productivity of mainstem habitat by protecting, enhancing, and connecting
6 mainstem spawning, rearing, and resting areas. Actions to consider
7 include, but are not limited to:

- 8
- 9 • providing appropriate spawning, rearing, and resting flows in the
- 10 mainstem;
- 11
- 12 • excavating backwater sloughs, alcoves, and side channels;
- 13
- 14 • reconnecting alcoves, sloughs and side channels to the main channel;
- 15
- 16 • dredging/excavation of lateral channels that have silted in;
- 17
- 18 • enhancement of wetlands;
- 19
- 20 • creating islands and shallow-water areas;
- 21
- 22 ~~□ adding large woody debris to these systems;~~
- 23
- 24 • stabilizing the water levels of the rivers and reservoirs to the extent
- 25 practicable;
- 26
- 27 • planting riparian and aquatic plants at appropriate locations; **and**
- 28
- 29 • acquiring and protecting lands adjacent to the mainstem.
- 30

31 Federal and state fish and wildlife agencies should analyze each proposed
32 action to increase mainstem spawning and rearing habitat to ensure that
33 the proposal may be implemented without adversely affecting the
34 migration of listed populations through the mainstem.

35

36 In instances where proposed operations to protect or enhance mainstem
37 spawning and rearing habitat may conflict with operations intended to
38 benefit juvenile or adult salmon migration, the system operators and the
39 fish and wildlife agencies and tribes should identify potential conflicts,
40 priorities, trade-offs, and opportunities and consult with the Council,
41 affected entities, and the public on how best to resolve conflicting needs.

42

43 The Council ~~NOAA Fisheries' 2000 Biological Opinion~~ **expects** ~~calls on~~
44 the federal operating agencies, in conjunction with the Environmental

1 Protection Agency and the U.S. Geological Survey, to develop a program
2 to 1) identify mainstem habitat sampling reaches, survey conditions,
3 describe cause-and-effect relationships and identify research needs; 2)
4 develop improvement plans for all mainstem reaches; and 3) initiate
5 improvements in three mainstem reaches. ~~The Council adopts a similar~~
6 ~~measure as well, provided that~~ This mainstem habitat initiative
7 ~~should~~ does not focus wholly, or even predominantly, on the mainstem
8 habitat needs of the populations currently listed. Salmon mitigation,
9 enhancement, and **rebuilding restoration** opportunities in the mainstem
10 may have greater relation to non-listed populations than to listed
11 populations.

12
13 ~~• Evaluate the feasibility of reintroducing anadromous fish into blocked~~
14 ~~areas, including above Chief Joseph and Grand Coulee dams. [deleted~~
15 ~~here; included in a reintroduction section below].~~

16 **In addition, the Council expects the federal operating agencies, in**
17 **conjunction with the relevant state and federal fish and wildlife**
18 **agencies and tribes to:**

- 19
20
- 21 • Identify the importance of protecting or improving mainstem
22 habitat for recovering bull trout populations. The Council ~~calls~~
23 ~~on~~ **expects** the relevant state and federal fish and wildlife agencies
24 to conduct the necessary research and report the analysis to the
25 Council at the earliest possible date.
 - 26 • Develop and implement actions that create littoral habitat and fish
27 structures along the shores of Lake Roosevelt to diversify food
28 available to fish and provide additional rearing habitat.
 - 29 • Implement actions to stabilize and improve Columbia River white
30 sturgeon and to recover listed Kootenai River white sturgeon.
 - 31 • Implement actions to stabilize and improve burbot populations in
32 the upper Columbia.
 - 33 • **Improve juvenile and adult Pacific lamprey passage survival**
34 **and reduce delays in migration through mainstem**
35 **hydroelectric projects.**
- 36
37
38

1 **b. Water quality**

2 **The federal action agencies should continue to update the *Water***
3 ***Quality Plan for Total Dissolved Gas and Water Temperature in the***
4 ***Mainstem Columbia and Snake Rivers (WQP)* and implement water**
5 **quality measures to enhance both ESA-listed and unlisted juvenile**
6 **and adult fish survival and mainstem spawning and rearing habitat.**
7 **The WQP is a comprehensive document containing water quality**
8 **improvement measures needed to meet Northwest Power Act, ESA**
9 **and Clean Water Act responsibilities. The WQP should include:**

- 10
- 11 • **Real-time monitoring and reporting of total dissolved gas (TDG)**
12 **and temperatures measured at fixed monitoring sites;**
- 13
- 14 • **Continued development of fish passage strategies that produce less**
15 **TDG, e.g., spillway weirs and surface passage outlets, including**
16 **updates to the System Total Dissolved Gas (SYSTDG) model to**
17 **reflect ongoing modifications to spillways or spill operations;**
- 18
- 19 • **Continued development and use of the SYSTDG model for**
20 **estimating TDG production to assist in real-time**
21 **decisionmakingdecision-making for spill operations, including**
22 **improved wind forecasting capabilities as appropriate;**
- 23
- 24 • **Continued development of the Corps' CE-QUAL-W2 model for**
25 **estimating mainstem Snake River temperatures and cold water**
26 **releases from Dworshak Dam on the Clearwater River to assist in**
27 **real-time decisionmakingdecision-making for Dworshak summer**
28 **operations;**
- 29
- 30 • **Expanding the water temperature modeling capabilities to include**
31 **the Columbia River from Grand Coulee to Bonneville dams to**
32 **better assess the effect of operations or flow depletions on summer**
33 **water temperatures; and**
- 34
- 35 • **In the long term, implement actions to reduce toxic contaminants in**
36 **the water to meet state and federal **water quality** standards. **The****
37 ****federal action agencies should partner with and support federal,****
38 ****state, and regional agencies' efforts to monitor toxic contaminants****
39 ****in the mainstem Columbia and Snake rivers and evaluate whether****
40 ****these toxic contaminants adversely affect anadromous or resident****
41 ****fish important to this program. If so, implement actions to reduce****
42 ****these toxic contaminants or their effects if doing so will provide****
43 ****survival benefits for fish in mitigation of adverse effects caused by****
44 ****the hydrosystem. In particular, investigate whether exposure to****
45 ****toxics in the mainstem, combined with the stress associated with****

1 |
2 |
3 |

dam passage, leave juvenile salmon more susceptible to disease and result in increased mortality or reduced productivity.

1 **c. Juvenile and adult passage, in general**

- 2 • Consistent with the **juvenile and adult passage performance**
3 **standards in the FCRPS Biological Opinion, and with the**
4 biological objectives and overarching strategies **above**, all actions to
5 provide or improve juvenile and adult fish passage through mainstem
6 dams should emphasize adult survivals as a high priority. In addition,
7 strategies should protect biological diversity by benefiting the broad
8 range of species, stocks, and life-history types in the river, not just
9 listed species, and should favor solutions that best fit natural behavior
10 patterns and river processes. To meet the diverse needs of multiple
11 species and allow for uncertainty, multiple juvenile passage methods
12 may be necessary at individual projects.
- 13
- 14 • The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, working within the regional fish
15 and wildlife project selection process, should report to the Council
16 annually on how decisions on **fish** passage improvements take into
17 account the strategies in the Council’s program. In addition, the
18 Council: 1) expects that the Independent Scientific Review Panel will
19 apply these strategies during the panel’s review of the reimbursable
20 portion of the Bonneville fish and wildlife budget, which includes the
21 Corps’ passage program; 2) will itself apply these standards in its
22 review of any Independent Scientific Review Panel report and
23 resulting recommendations to Congress on these passage budget items;
24 and 3) will recommend to Congress, in its reimbursable budget
25 recommendations, that **annual Columbia River Fish Mitigation**
26 **(CRFM) Program** budget requests from the Corps of Engineers be
27 evaluated for consistency with these principles.
- 28
- 29 • The Corps of Engineers should apply **cost-effective** value
30 **engineering procedures** to all **fish passage** projects that exceed \$10
31 million, using firms independent of the Corps of Engineers. **The value**
32 **engineering method is an efficient and productive decision-making**
33 **process which uses: a) systematic and organized procedural**
34 **processes; b) creative methods to generate alternatives; c) essential**
35 **functional approach; and d) comparisons of worth compared to**
36 **life-cycle costs.**
- 37
- 38 • For the purpose of planning for this fish and wildlife program, and
39 particularly the hydrosystem portion of the program, the Council
40 assumes that, in the near term, the breaching of any dams in the
41 mainstem will not occur. The Council revises its fish and wildlife
42 program every five years, at a minimum. If, within that five-year
43 period, the status of the lower Snake River dams or any other major
44 component of the Columbia River hydrosystem has changed, the
45 Council can take that into account as part of the review process.

1 **d. Juvenile fish transportation**

- 2 • Because the existence of the dams and reservoirs creates conditions
3 that are not natural, the Council ~~while seeking~~ to improve inriver
4 **migration** conditions, **The Council** recognizes that there are survival
5 benefits from transportation of migrating juvenile salmon **under**
6 **certain inriver conditions**. Therefore, the Council 1) continues to
7 accept juvenile fish transportation as a transitional strategy **used to**
8 **help meet system survival performance metrics**; 2) will give
9 priority to the funding of research that more accurately measures the
10 effect of improved inriver migration compared to transportation and
11 the comparative rate of adult returns to the spawning grounds of
12 transported and inriver migrants; 3) ~~will~~ **recommends using adaptive**
13 **management to make appropriate adjustments in transport**
14 **operations** ~~increasing inriver migration~~ when research **or new**
15 **information** demonstrates that **a modified transportation protocol is**
16 **warranted** ~~salmon survival would be improved as a result of such~~
17 ~~migration, and vice versa~~; and 4) endorses the strategy of “spread the
18 risk” until it is determined whether migration inriver or transportation
19 provides the best levels of survival.
20
- 21 • NOAA Fisheries’ 2008 ~~FCRPS~~ **FCRPS** Biological Opinion includes **actions**
22 ~~a series of measures~~ concerning the transportation of ESA-listed
23 juvenile salmon and steelhead. These are part of the biological opinion
24 measures that the Council incorporates into its mainstem plan.
25
- 26 • In analyzing in any year the potential benefits of maximizing or
27 minimizing transportation, the federal operating agencies must
28 recognize that significant populations of **both listed and unlisted**
29 salmon and steelhead important to the biological objectives of this
30 program enter the mainstem hydrosystem either below the transport
31 projects altogether or above McNary Dam but are not, **or not**
32 effectively, transported at McNary. Inriver passage of these fish is
33 either the only passage alternative available or the most significant
34 passage alternative.
35
- 36 • The three highest priorities for juvenile transportation studies should
37 be to:
38
- 39 ○ evaluate whether the survival benefits of transporting **fall chinook**
40 from McNary Dam are sufficiently greater, at least under certain
41 circumstances, than inriver passage to justify continuing (or
42 increasing) the transport effort from that dam;
 - 43 ○ conduct a transportation study that targets Snake River fall
44 chinook, **including investigation and identification of key early**

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

- **life history characteristics for both yearling and subyearling life histories**; and
- more clearly determine what delayed **differential** survival effects (**D-value**), if any, occur due to transport **operations**, such as adverse effects on homing behavior, **and address other ISAB recommendations**.¹⁴
- NOAA Fisheries should conduct annual evaluations of the effectiveness of, **and improvements in,**- transportation **operations** and report the results to the Council and the Independent Scientific Advisory Board.

¹⁴ For the entirety of the ISAB recommendations, see *ISAB Latent Mortality Report (ISAB 2007-1)*.

1 | **3. Spill**

- 2 |
- 3 | • When making long-term, annual, and in-season decisions for when, and to
- 4 | what extent, to spill water for passage, **the federal action agencies should**
- 5 | **give** priority ~~should be given~~ to 1) minimizing impacts on returning adults and
- 6 | 2) optimizing **inriver** passage survival benefits for populations that are
- 7 | important to the biological objectives of this program, **especially those and**
- 8 | that cannot be transported, or are ineffectively transported. This includes
- 9 | spring chinook from the John Day River; wild, naturally spawning, and key
- 10 | hatchery populations of spring chinook from other tributaries above
- 11 | Bonneville Dam but below the transport projects (or where only a small
- 12 | proportion are collected at McNary), such as from the Deschutes, Hood,
- 13 | ~~Umatilla~~, Wind, Klickitat, Umatilla and Yakima rivers; the listed **Upper and**
- 14 | **Middle Columbia steelhead; the listed Upper Columbia chinook**, Hanford
- 15 | Reach fall chinook; and Snake River chinook, to the extent transportation
- 16 | should be determined to be ineffective. These spill objectives will require a
- 17 | better understanding of the spill levels that optimize passage survival at each
- 18 | dam and how these **may** change at various flow levels and **after**
- 19 | **implementation of system configuration improvements** for the range of
- 20 | fish populations that pass ~~each~~ the project.
- 21 |
- 22 | • The federal action agencies and NOAA Fisheries, in consultation with the
- 23 | other federal and state fish and wildlife agencies and tribes **and the Council**,
- 24 | should **evaluate and** determine an optimal **juvenile fish** passage strategy at
- 25 | each dam and for each passage route **to meet both the hydrosystem survival**
- 26 | **performance standards and the requirements of the Clean Water Act for**
- 27 | **total dissolved gas while minimizing adult fallback problems. Thus the**
- 28 | **dates and levels for spill operations identified in the NOAA Fisheries 2008**
- 29 | **FCRPS Biological Opinion for each project may be modified through the**
- 30 | **regional implementation planning process and adaptive management**
- 31 | **process**. The Council seeks to maximize improvements in life-cycle survival.
- 32 | This requires determining the cumulative effects on fish survival of passing
- 33 | multiple dams and taking that information into account.
- 34 |

1 •Spill should be managed according to the most biologically effective level at
2 each project. Spillways continue to be an effective inriver passage route,
3 more benign in general than juvenile bypass systems or turbine passage. On
4 the other hand, 1) spilling to the maximum gas supersaturation levels of 120
5 percent may be increasing mortality at some dams when compared to what
6 would occur at lesser volumes of spill; 2) spillway passage can also be the
7 passage method most costly to the regional power system, especially in years
8 of low water or high market prices for energy; 3) the difference in survival
9 between spillway passage and other passage methods may in some, but not
10 all, instances be minimal; 4) the maximum level of fish survival at each
11 project may be different from, and not necessarily correlated with, the most
12 spill; and 5) spill may have negative effects on returning adults. For these
13 reasons, the Council will work with the federal operating and fish and
14 wildlife agencies, in consultation with the state fish and wildlife agencies and
15 tribes and the Independent Scientific Advisory Board in a rigorous
16 evaluation of the biological effectiveness and costs of spillway passage at each
17 project and bring that information to bear in a systematic way in decisions
18 on when, and how much, to spill. The goal of this evaluation should be to
19 determine if it is possible to achieve the same, or greater, levels of survival
20 and biological benefit to migrating fish as currently achieved while reducing
21 the amount of water spilled, thus decreasing the adverse impact on the
22 region's power supply. At the conclusion of this evaluation, the Council will
23 conduct a public review process with the goal of providing recommendations
24 to the federal agencies for the most biologically effective spill actions at the
25 lowest cost possible.

26
27 •This evaluation should include, or set in motion, at least the following:

28
29 1) Dam specific estimates of smolt passage survival by species through
30 spillways. Spill efficiency information should be updated and applied in
31 future spill decisions and passage modeling analyses. The Council recognizes
32 the difficulty in obtaining reliable empirical survival estimates linked
33 specifically to spill conditions, but the power system impacts of spill require
34 an improvement in the quality of this information.

35
36 2) Additional research on the biological consequences of various spill
37 strategies is needed to determine the long term effects of extended exposure
38 to high levels of gas supersaturation on life cycle survivals.

1 ~~3)The interaction between spill, dissolved gas levels, adult passage, and~~
2 ~~survival needs additional research to better determine if, and how, spill~~
3 ~~strategies affect adult migration and survival, and what can be done to~~
4 ~~minimize those effects.~~

5
6 ~~•As a particular focus, the Council calls for NOAA Fisheries, the federal~~
7 ~~operating agencies, and salmon managers to immediately implement tests to~~
8 ~~examine the benefits of the current summer spill program for outmigrating~~
9 ~~juvenile fall chinook, and to determine whether the biological benefits can be~~
10 ~~achieved in a more effective and less costly manner. Summer spill costs are~~
11 ~~high. Using a 50-year historical water record, the Council staff estimated that~~
12 ~~the cost of bypass spill for fish during the months of July and August~~
13 ~~averages one-third of the total cost impact of all mainstem operations~~
14 ~~designed for fish and wildlife protection. While the summer spill program~~
15 ~~provides survival advantages to inriver outmigrants, the Council~~
16 ~~recommends an evaluation of the efficacy and cost of all actions available to~~
17 ~~improve juvenile and adult survival. These tests should be designed to~~
18 ~~encompass the full life cycle of fall chinook and evaluate all sources of~~
19 ~~mortality. This provision is not intended to dispute that spill is generally~~
20 ~~considered to be the safest passage route for inriver juvenile migrants, but~~
21 ~~rather to pursue more rigorous analysis and assessment of alternatives that~~
22 ~~may provide similar, or more effective, biological benefits at reduced cost.~~

23
24 ~~•The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, in consultation with these other entities,~~
25 ~~should place a priority on designing, testing, and evaluating methods and~~
26 ~~devices that could produce the same or greater benefit to fish while spilling~~
27 ~~less water, especially what are known as removable spillway weirs. If these~~
28 ~~methods and devices produce positive results, they should be implemented as~~
29 ~~soon as it is practical to do so.~~

30
31 ~~•If efficient and effective use of spill, including the substantive spill~~
32 ~~experiments called for earlier, results in increased volumes of water passing~~
33 ~~through active turbines for power generation, apply an equitable part of the~~
34 ~~additional financial resources that result to implement additional prioritized~~
35 ~~measures in the Council's fish and wildlife program.~~

36
37 ~~•The Council intends to recommend specific spill strategies at specific~~
38 ~~projects after comprehensive spill survival studies have concluded. The~~
39 ~~Council intends these studies to begin immediately. The federal agencies'~~

1 ~~2003 plans for system operations to accelerate spill testing at John Day and~~
2 ~~Ice Harbor dams are examples of the types of tests that should be conducted.~~

3
4 ~~•Until the cumulative effects of high levels of spill are better understood, the~~
5 ~~Council recommends that the region continue to monitor and evaluate spill~~
6 ~~strategies. The Council recommends that more strenuous efforts be~~
7 ~~undertaken to avoid exceeding total dissolved gas saturation limits of 120~~
8 ~~percent, over a time period of the twelve highest hourly measurements at all~~
9 ~~Federal Columbia River Power System projects engaged in spill operations.~~
10 ~~State authority to grant a variance from the Federal Clean Water Act~~
11 ~~standard of 110 percent total dissolved gas supersaturation requires a~~
12 ~~determination by the state that the variance creates no long-term impact to~~
13 ~~the beneficial use for which the deviation was authorized.~~

14
15 **4. Surface Passage Systems and New Fish Passage Technologies**

- 16
17
 - 18 • **To provide passage for juvenile fish that optimizes the survival of focal**
19 **species by closely approximating** natural physical and biological conditions,
20 and to increase the energy produced by the hydrosystem, the U.S. Army Corps
21 of Engineers, in consultation with other regional entities, should continue
22 testing and developing surface bypass systems at mainstem dams, taking into
23 account the widest range of biological diversity as described in the **mainstem**
24 biological objectives and overarching strategies, utilizing an expedited
25 approach to prototype development, and ensuring full evaluation for the
26 developmental phase.
 - 27 • The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, in consultation with other entities, should
28 design, test, and evaluate **passage methods and technologies that could**
29 **produce the same or greater benefit to fish while spilling less water,**
30 **especially what are known as spillway weirs and surface flow outlets. If**
31 **these methods and devices produce positive results, they should be**
32 **implemented as soon as it is practical to do so.**

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27

5. Juvenile Bypass Systems

- **In order to** provide passage for juvenile fish that **optimizes the survival of focal species, including by reestablishing natural river processes that** most closely approximates natural physical and biological conditions, and to increase the energy produced by the hydrosystem, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers **and Bonneville** should:
 - consider all relevant biological information and criteria in preparing configuration and operations plans for each mainstem project, ~~continue testing and developing surface bypass systems,~~ taking into account the widest range of biological diversity as described in the **mainstem biological objectives and overarching strategies, with the objectives of reducing passage delay and increasing fish survival through the forebay, dam and tailrace to meet the survival performance standards**~~utilizing an expedited approach to prototype development, and ensuring full evaluation for the developmental phase;~~
 - relocate bypass outfalls in those circumstances where there are problems with predation, **tailrace egress, or other factors contributing to** ~~and~~ juvenile fish injury ~~or~~ mortality;
 - modify turbines **or optimize turbine operations** to improve juvenile survival; ~~and~~
 - conduct research on fish diseases at fish passage **and collection** facilities; ~~and~~
 - **modify operations or structures** ~~or spillways where spill deflectors are causing fish mortality.~~

1 | **6. Adult Passage**

- 2 |
- 3 | • The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers should improve the overall effectiveness
- 4 | of the adult fish passage program. This includes expediting schedules to
- 5 | design and install improvements to fish passage facilities. The ultimate
- 6 | survival and successful spawning of adult fish are a high Council priority
- 7 | because returning adults determine the size and health of future fish
- 8 | populations. Where it is beneficial, cool water releases from reservoirs should
- 9 | continue to be used to facilitate adult migration. More emphasis should be
- 10 | placed on research; monitoring and evaluation; increased accuracy of fish
- 11 | counts; expansion of fish counting to all species of interest; **including**
- 12 | **lamprey**, installation of PIT-tag and radio-tag detectors; evaluation of
- 13 | escapement numbers to spawning grounds and hatcheries; research into water
- 14 | temperature and spill effects on fish passage; and the connection between fish
- 15 | passage design and fish behavior. In particular:

- 16 |
- 17 | ○ as a priority for the Corps of Engineers' capital construction program,
- 18 | **implement structural improvements to** correct adult fish passage
- 19 | problems **or improve reliability of adult passage facilities** and report
- 20 | annually to the Council on progress;
- 21 | ○ install adult PIT-tag detectors at **key** projects that do not have them;
- 22 | ○ improve fish counting accuracy **and evaluate adult survival (conversion**
- 23 | **rates)**; and
- 24 | ~~1)conduct research on fish diseases at fish passage facilities.~~
- 25 | ○ starting at The Dalles Dam, investigate the use of, or need for, surface
- 26 | flow outlets during the winter months to provide a safer fallback route for
- 27 | over-wintering steelhead and kelts.

- 28 |
- 29 | • Bonneville and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, in coordination with
- 30 | federal, state and tribal fish managers and the Council, should prepare and
- 31 | implement a Snake River steelhead kelt management plan to improve the
- 32 | inriver survival and productivity of B-run steelhead populations.
- 33 |

1 **7. Lamprey and Sturgeon Passage**

2 **a. Lamprey**

3 **In the Columbia River Basin, Pacific lampreys traditionally migrate**
4 **hundreds of miles through both mainstem Columbia and Snake river**
5 **habitats, encountering a variety of obstacles that could negatively**
6 **affect their populations. Large mainstem hydropower dams, which**
7 **are designed primarily to effectively pass salmon and steelhead, delay**
8 **and obstruct adult and juvenile lamprey passage. Predation may also**
9 **be a limiting factor for mainstem passage of lamprey. Juvenile**
10 **lamprey have been observed in the stomach contents of smallmouth**
11 **bass and Northern pikeminnow in the tailraces of lower Columbia**
12 **River federal dams, and adult lamprey have been observed being**
13 **taken by California sea lions downstream of Bonneville Dam.**

- 14
- 15 **• Bonneville and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, in coordination**
16 **with federal, state and tribal fish managers and the Council,**
17 **should implement the following measures to improve adult and**
18 **juvenile Pacific lamprey passage survival and reduce delays in**
19 **migration:**
 - 20 **○ Identify specific fish passage structures;**
 - 21 **○ Identify operations at mainstem hydropower dams that**
22 **delay, obstruct or kill migrating lamprey;**
 - 23 **○ Develop and implement lamprey passage aids at known**
24 **passage obstacles;**
 - 25 **○ Monitor lamprey passage at mainstem hydropower dams to**
26 **evaluate passage improvement actions and to identify additional**
27 **passage problem areas;**
 - 28 **○ Assess lamprey passage efficiency, direct mortality and/or other**
29 **metrics relating to migratory success of lamprey; and**
30 **Determine predation on lamprey during mainstem passage.**
 - 31 **○**

32 **b. Sturgeon**

33 **Ongoing changes in system operations and dam configuration affect**
34 **the movement of white sturgeon in the lower Columbia. Studies**
35 **indicate that white sturgeon move downstream through the reservoirs**
36 **and pass downstream through spillways. The installation of**
37 **removable spillway weirs at dams may affect downstream passage by**
38 **white sturgeon via spillways. Bonneville and the Corps of Engineers**
39 **should:**

- 40
- 41 **• Study the effects on downstream passage of white sturgeon with**
42 **and without removable spillway weirs;**
- 43

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

- **Estimate mortality by size for fish that pass over spillways and removable spillway weirs and those that pass downstream through turbines;**
- **If significant mortality is occurring, identify and evaluate the feasibility of mitigation measures; and**
- **In general, evaluate the importance of connectivity among sturgeon populations; assess whether the mainstem dams isolate sturgeon populations; and if so, evaluate the feasibility of mitigation.**

1 | **8. Water Management**

- 2 |
- 3 | • Manage water through the hydrosystem **to optimize survival of focal species,**
- 4 | **including by reestablishing** ~~so that~~ patterns of flow **that** more closely
- 5 | approximate the natural hydrographic patterns and are directed at re-
- 6 | establishing natural river processes where feasible, and produce the highest
- 7 | possible survival rates for a broad range of affected fish within the physical
- 8 | limitations of the multiple purposes of the region’s storage reservoirs and
- 9 | hydrosystem. Assure that any changes in water management are premised
- 10 | upon, and proportionate to, fish and wildlife benefits, while assuring the
- 11 | region an adequate, efficient, economical, and reliable power supply.
- 12 | Elements of this general strategy for water management include:

- 13 |
- 14 | ○ Frame habitat restoration in the context of measured trends in water
- 15 | quantity and quality.
- 16 | ○ Allow for seasonal fluctuations in flow, including floods. Reduce large
- 17 | and rapid short-term fluctuations. Reduce or eliminate stranding and
- 18 | other problems associated with fluctuation of the hydroelectric system.
- 19 | ○ Increase the correspondence between water temperatures and the
- 20 | naturally occurring regimes of temperatures throughout the basin. To the
- 21 | extent possible, use stored water to manage water temperatures below the
- 22 | storage reservoirs where temperature benefits from releases can be
- 23 | shown to provide improved fish survival.

24 | ~~○ Identify, protect, and restore ecosystem functions in the Columbia River~~

25 | ~~estuary and nearshore ocean discharge plume as affected by actions~~

26 | ~~within the Columbia River hydrosystem. This includes evaluating flow~~

27 | ~~effects, river operations, and estuary area habitat changes, as well as~~

28 | ~~local effects from activities such as dredging and pollution from urban~~

29 | ~~areas, to better understand and improve the relationship between estuary~~

30 | ~~and near-shore plume characteristics and the productivity, abundance,~~

31 | ~~and diversity of salmon and steelhead populations.~~

- 32 |
- 33 | • Systemwide water management, including flow augmentation from storage
- 34 | reservoirs, should attempt to meet the needs of **both** anadromous and
- 35 | resident fish species in the river and upstream storage reservoirs, so that
- 36 | actions taken to benefit one species do not unnecessarily come at the expense
- 37 | of other species. Flow augmentation is defined as the intentional release or
- 38 | drafting of water from storage reservoirs for the purpose of increasing flows
- 39 | to enhance migratory conditions for juvenile and adult life-stages of salmon
- 40 | and steelhead through the reach of the lower river hydroelectric dams. The
- 41 | federal system operators, NOAA Fisheries and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife
- 42 | Service should identify potential conflicts and seek recommendations from
- 43 | the Council, fish and wildlife agencies, tribes, and other affected entities on
- 44 | how best to balance the different needs prior to the implementation of flow
- 45 | actions.

1 ~~oThe Council recognizes the continuing controversies over: a) the nature, extent of,~~
2 ~~and reasons for the flow survival relationship for migrating salmon and steelhead;~~
3 ~~b) the consistency between the flow targets and the flow measures; and c) flow~~
4 ~~augmentation in general, with these implications:~~

5
6 ~~▪The Council continues to call on Bonneville, in consultation with NOAA Fisheries~~
7 ~~and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, to prepare an annual report based on~~
8 ~~scientific research for review by the Independent Scientific Advisory Board that~~
9 ~~documents the flow augmentation actions taken, the benefits of flow~~
10 ~~augmentation for fish survival and the precise attributes of flow that may make it~~
11 ~~beneficial.~~

12
13 ~~▪The Council will consult with these and other entities to determine whether and how~~
14 ~~to conduct a comprehensive evaluation of survival, flow targets, and flow~~
15 ~~augmentation to determine the relationship between specific management actions~~
16 ~~and changes in life cycle and lifetime survival. This evaluation will, among other~~
17 ~~things:~~

- 18 ~~•evaluate the scientific validity of the flow targets and flow augmentation actions~~
19 ~~in the 20080 FCRPS Biological Opinion;~~
- 20 ~~•evaluate how often, and for what duration, river flows, whether augmented or~~
21 ~~not from storage releases, meet the spring and summer flow targets in the~~
22 ~~20080 FCRPS Biological Opinion, and what additional amounts of water~~
23 ~~from what sources would be required to meet the targets on a sustained basis;~~
- 24 ~~•quantify the volume and shape of water that has been, and is being, provided as~~
25 ~~flow augmentation;~~
- 26 ~~•translate to the extent possible the incremental increase in flows from flow~~
27 ~~augmentation to changes in water velocity and temperature;~~
- 28 ~~•evaluate and predict to the extent possible how changes in adult survival relate to~~
29 ~~changes in flow; and~~
- 30 ~~•evaluate hydrosystem operations and establish the relative benefits and costs of~~
31 ~~those operations to native fish throughout the Columbia watershed.~~

32
33 ~~At the conclusion of such an evaluation, the Council will conduct a public review~~
34 ~~process with the goal of determining whether to provide revised recommendations~~
35 ~~to the federal agencies for continuing or modifying the current water management~~
36 ~~program for migrating salmon and steelhead. The Council may also decide at that~~
37 ~~time, if necessary, to initiate a process to further amend the mainstem portion of~~
38 ~~the Council's program to address system management matters.~~

39
40 ~~▪The spring and summer flow objectives in NOAA Fisheries 20080 Biological~~
41 ~~Opinion are guidelines for understanding and evaluating water management~~
42 ~~actions in the Columbia Basin intended to establish and support habitat conditions~~
43 ~~for many life stages of multiple species of fish throughout the mainstem Columbia~~
44 ~~and Snake rivers. The Council understands these objectives to be flexible~~
45 ~~guidelines that do not determine or override the multiple set of objectives and~~
46 ~~strategies in the two biological opinions and in this program.~~

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

Baseline Operations of the Federal Columbia River Power System established in the 2008~~0~~ Biological Opinions as a baseline for the water management strategies of this Program

- NOAA Fisheries' 2008~~0~~ Biological Opinions **for the FCRPS and the Upper Snake federal projects** includes a series of measures concerning water management for the benefit of listed juvenile salmon and steelhead, while the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's 2000 **and 2006** Biological Opinions includes a set of measures concerning water management for the benefit of listed bull trout and Kootenai River white sturgeon. The water management measures in these biological opinions are **incorporated as** part of this program, and the Council concurs that these are appropriate operations to protect, mitigate, and enhance those anadromous and resident fish listed under the Endangered Species Act and affected by the Columbia hydrosystem. ~~The measures and objectives in these two biological opinions need to be reconciled if there are inconsistencies, and some of the water management strategies in the Council's program are intended, at least in part, for that purpose.~~
- The Council ~~may is-adopting~~ additional water management strategies to protect, mitigate, and enhance all fish and wildlife affected by the hydrosystem and meet the biological objectives and vision of its program. To the extent these water management strategies appear to conflict with the biological opinions, the Council does not mean that the federal operating agencies should act contrary to the biological opinions in order to implement the strategies in this program. The Council intends instead that the federal operating agencies make every effort practicable to use the operational flexibility in the biological opinions to meet the biological opinion requirements and implement the water management strategies in this program. ~~The exception is where the Council calls for explicit scientific testing of a particular operation in the biological opinion. The Council calls on the federal operating agencies and fish and wildlife agencies to implement the Council's recommendations in consultation with the Council, the states, and the tribes.~~

Hanford Reach/mainstem and estuary spawning, rearing, and resting habitat

- Manage flows, while maintaining consistency with this mainstem plan's flow and reservoir operations, to protect, improve, and expand spawning, rearing, and resting habitat in the mainstem and estuary. In particular, the federal and non-federal project operators should provide suitable and stable flows to establish and protect the habitat conditions necessary for spawning and rearing in the Hanford Reach on an equal basis as managing water to support the migration of listed species. This includes providing the flows required by the Vernita Bar agreement and by subsequent agreements to extend stable flows to reduce or prevent stranding problems in the Reach. It also includes

1 the need for the Bureau of Reclamation, as the operator of Grand Coulee
2 Dam, and the operators of the mid-Columbia projects to take the steps
3 necessary, separately and together, to further reduce flow fluctuations
4 through the Reach that affect spawning and rearing.
5

6 *Spring reservoir/flow operations in general*
7

- 8 • Refill should be a high priority for spring operations at Hungry Horse, Libby,
9 Grand Coulee, and Dworshak dams so that the reservoirs have the maximum
10 amount of water available during the summer. While on average the target
11 date for refill should be ~~early~~late July for Libby and the end of June for the
12 other projects, the system operators should work to adjust the actual refill
13 date based on reservoir conditions and inflow forecasts.
14
- 15 • Incorporating the ~~2000 Biological Opinions~~ of NOAA Fisheries and the
16 U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service into this program includes the opinions'
17 approach to spring water management in general, which the Council
18 understands as operating the storage reservoirs to ensure a high probability
19 of water surface elevations within one-half foot of the upper flood control
20 rule curve by April 10 and **a high probability of to refill by June 30**
21 ~~(early~~late July for Libby), otherwise passing the spring runoff through the
22 storage reservoirs. ~~The NOAA Fisheries biological opinion retains the~~
23 ~~flexibility to allow active flow augmentation to occur in the spring under~~
24 ~~certain circumstances at the call of the Technical Management Team. The~~
25 ~~Council calls on the federal agencies not to exercise this flexibility to allow~~
26 ~~for flow augmentation or additional reservoir drafting in the spring except~~
27 ~~under extraordinary circumstances and only after consultation with the~~
28 ~~Council.~~
29

30 *Spring operations at Hungry Horse and Libby dams*
31

- 32 • **VARQ flood control operations and Integrated Rule Curve operations.** At
33 Hungry Horse and Libby dams, continue to implement the VARQ flood
34 control operation called for in the biological opinions and implement the
35 Integrated Rule Curve operations as recommended by the Montana
36 Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks for the benefit of native resident fish
37 in those reservoirs. Operations should reduce the frequency of refill failure (to
38 within five feet of full pool) at Hungry Horse and Libby reservoirs as
39 compared to historic operation. Implement seasonal flow windows and flow
40 ramping rates in the Flathead and Kootenai rivers downstream of the storage
41 reservoirs, and maintain minimum flows in the Flathead and Kootenai rivers
42 as described by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's 2000 **and 2006**
43 **Biological Opinions** and the Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks,
44 including the sliding-scale flow strategy for bull trout specified by the
45 biological opinions. Implement VARQ operations in an attempt to avoid the
46 more extreme adverse effects at Grand Coulee that occur in a small percentage

1 of years. The Corps of Engineers should consult with the Council to identify
2 those occurrences and effects and to determine what might be done to
3 minimize or avoid them, and report annually to the Council on VARQ
4 implementation to show that these extreme adverse effects are not occurring.
5 ~~The Corps of Engineers should also place a priority on conducting the further~~
6 ~~comprehensive review of flood control operations called for in the NOAA~~
7 ~~Fisheries 2000 Biological Opinion.~~

- 8
9 • **Operations at Libby Dam to benefit Kootenai River white sturgeon.** The
10 U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service’s 2006~~0~~ Biological Opinion concerning
11 hydrosystem operations that affect ESA-listed Kootenai River white sturgeon
12 specifies a “tiered” strategy for flow augmentation from Libby Dam to
13 simulate a natural spring freshet, controlled within flood constraints, **to**
14 **improve the habitat attributes for white sturgeon spawning/recruitment.**
15 Volumes **dedicated to spring sturgeon flows** are determined by forecasted
16 water availability so that higher flows are released when ample water is
17 available and minimal flow augmentation occurs during drought. ~~The Council~~
18 ~~recommends that the average flow augmentation volumes outlined in Figure 1~~
19 ~~be used as a guide for sturgeon operations at Libby Dam. These augmentation~~
20 ~~volumes are not specified volumes and should represent targets for planning~~
21 ~~purposes. Actual a~~Augmentation volumes in any given year will depend on
22 flood control constraints, reservoir refill targets, water availability, and
23 benefits to the Kootenai white sturgeon population. ~~This strategy represents a~~
24 ~~refinement to volumes specified in the 2000 Biological Opinion.~~

25
26 The Council ~~also~~ recognizes that additional work **may be is** required to further
27 refine appropriate sturgeon operations at Libby Dam, and recommends that
28 regional entities continue to work to increase the biological benefits provided
29 by the **tiered** flow augmentation volumes.

30 31 32 *Spring operations at Grand Coulee Dam*

- 33
34 • Operate Grand Coulee Dam in the winter and spring (from January through
35 June) consistent with ~~the 2008 FCRPS b~~**the 2008 FCRPS b**~~Biological e~~**Biological e**~~Opinion~~ operations and
36 ordinary hydrosystem operations, with the following considerations:

37
38 ~~–Attempt to meet the following minimum monthly elevation targets in Lake~~
39 ~~Roosevelt while trying to achieve the minimum monthly mean retention times as~~
40 ~~follows, until fisheries evaluation information indicates a change in Figure 2.~~

41
42 ~~–March to May elevations are recommended minimums, with the understanding that~~
43 ~~flood control operations will determine the actual upper elevation.~~

- Two high priorities for Grand Coulee through the year should be to contribute to the establishment and protection of the necessary conditions in the Hanford Reach described earlier and to refill by the end of June.
- As much as possible, manage the reservoir and dam discharges to produce steady flows across each season and each day to minimize reservoir fluctuations and ramping rates.

Spring and summer water management in the Snake River

- Spring and summer water management in the Snake River should be consistent with NOAA Fisheries’ 2008~~0~~ Biological Opinion, with the following additional observations:
 - Providing up to 487 Kcf of water from the Bureau of Reclamation’s ~~u~~Upper Snake River Basin projects **consistent with the NOAA Fisheries’ 2008 Upper Snake Basin Biological Opinion. Providing water from and** Idaho Power Company’s Hells Canyon projects to assist in achieving Snake River flow objectives at Lower Granite Dam **and/or fall chinook spawning and incubation flows in the Hells Canyon reach is not part of the 2000 Biological Opinion and** will largely be addressed in a separate, ongoing ESA Section 7 consultations. Flows or volumes of water will be made available from upper Snake River storage by the Bureau of Reclamation or any other entity only if consistent with applicable state and federal law, including but not limited to, Idaho Code §42-1763B.¹⁵
 - ~~○ The Council encourages the Bonneville Power Administration, Idaho Power Company, and the Bureau of Reclamation to execute a shaping agreement to ensure that flows from Brownlee Reservoir will occur to assist juvenile and adult migration when most needed, at the call of the Technical Management Team (TMT).~~
 - ~~○ Lower Granite flow targets do not account for differences in characteristics between flow augmentation sources, or the biologically significant components of those sources. Given that existing flow targets are often unattainable, simply striving to meet flow targets regardless of the degree of biological benefit obtained is an ineffective and uneconomical strategy for salmon recovery.~~
 - ~~– Cost effective analysis for the “same biological objectives(s)” is an action commensurate with statutory provisions of the 1980 Power Act when~~

¹⁵ No provision of this amendment may, by recommendation of the Council, propose to “(1) affect the rights or jurisdictions of the United States, the States, Indian tribes, or other entities over waters of any river or stream or over any groundwater resource, (2) alter, amend, repeal, interpret, modify or be in conflict with any interstate compact made by the States, or (3) otherwise be construed to alter, or establish the respective rights of States, the United States, Indian tribes, or any person with respect to any water or water related right.” Northwest Power Act, Section 10(h).

1 reviewing issues surrounding flow objectives at Lower Granite Dam.
2 Given the competing issues of flow augmentation and available water
3 resources, the Council requests Bonneville, in coordination with NOAA
4 Fisheries, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, state fish and wildlife
5 managers and tribes to: a) define Endangered Species Act harvest and
6 recovery objectives for anadromous fish in specific mainstem sections
7 and in tributaries of the mainstem; and b) develop alternative strategies to
8 flow augmentation that will achieve “the same biological objectives.”
9 Factors related to this analysis are expected to include hatchery
10 objectives, ocean effects, dissolved gas trauma losses from spill and spill
11 effects on migrating juveniles and returning adults.

12 ●
13 *Summer reservoir operations at Hungry Horse and Libby, Grand Coulee and*
14 *Dworshak Dams*

15
16 ● **Hungry Horse and Libby Dams:**

- 17
- 18 ○ Reduce the frequency of refill failure (to within five feet of full pool) as
19 compared to historic operations; implement seasonal flow windows and
20 flow ramping rates in the Flathead and Kootenai rivers downstream of
21 the storage reservoirs and maintain minimum flows in the Flathead and
22 Kootenai rivers as described by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service’s
23 2000 Biological Opinions and the Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife
24 and Parks.
 - 25
 - 26 ○ Implement and evaluate an ~~interim~~ summer operation **at both projects** as
27 follows:
 - 28 ☐- Summer reservoir drafting limits at Hungry Horse and Libby should be
29 10 feet from full pool by the end of September (elevations 3550 and
30 2449, respectively) in all years except the lowest 20th percentile water
31 supply (drought years) **as measured at The Dalles Dam**, when the
32 drafts ~~may~~ be increased to 20 feet from full pool by the end of
33 September. This would protect fisheries resources in the reservoirs and
34 rivers downstream, while providing additional flow augmentation for
35 fish immediately below the project(s) and in the lower Columbia
36 River.
 - 37
 - 38 - Draft each storage reservoir according to elevation limitations that,
39 when combined with projected inflows, result in stable and “flat” or
40 very gradually declining weekly average outflows from July through
41 September. ~~The Council understands that the effect of these operations~~
42 ~~and summer drafting limits would be to reduce the drafting of these~~
43 ~~two reservoirs in summer compared to what they would be under~~
44 ~~ordinary biological opinion operations. The Council believes there is~~
45 ~~significant flexibility within the biological opinions to implement the~~
46 ~~summer reservoir operations as an experiment. If there is disagreement~~

1 on this, the Council calls on the federal operating agencies and federal
2 fish and wildlife agencies to consult on the operation of these two
3 projects in an effort to reach agreement that will allow this operation
4 as an experiment. The agencies should also continue to investigate
5 creative water management actions for summer flows, including what
6 are known as the “Libby-Arrow” and “Libby-Duncan” swaps,
7 although implementation of the summer operations experiment at
8 Hungry Horse and Libby is not to be dependent on these actions.

9 ~~Little information exists about the relationship, if any, between levels of~~
10 ~~flow, flow augmentation and juvenile and adult salmon survival~~
11 ~~through the lower Columbia hydrosystem reach. Therefore, the focus~~
12 ~~of the experiment and evaluation to accompany the implementation of~~
13 ~~these summer operations at Hungry Horse and Libby should be on: a)~~
14 ~~ascertaining the nature, extent of and reasons for a flow survival~~
15 ~~relationship through the lower Columbia system, if any exists; b)~~
16 ~~determining whether flow augmentation from the upper Columbia~~
17 ~~storage projects has any effect on levels of survival; and c)~~
18 ~~determining the benefits to resident fish from this operation. The~~
19 ~~Corps of Engineers and the Bureau of Reclamation should consult with~~
20 ~~a team formed from the Council, the Independent Scientific Advisory~~
21 ~~Board, the Montana Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks, the~~
22 ~~Confederated Salish-Kootenai Tribes, NOAA Fisheries and the U.S.~~
23 ~~Fish and Wildlife Service to design a proper experiment and~~
24 ~~evaluation of this nature to take place during the implementation of~~
25 ~~these operations. The Council’s hypothesis is that the proposed~~
26 ~~operations will significantly benefit listed and non-listed resident fish~~
27 ~~in the reservoirs and in the portions of the rivers below the reservoirs~~
28 ~~without discernible effects on the survival of juvenile and adult~~
29 ~~anadromous fish when compared to ordinary operations under the~~
30 ~~biological opinions.~~

31
32 ~~As the federal operating agencies implement this operation, they should~~
33 ~~ensure there is no adverse biological impact on Lake Roosevelt~~
34 ~~fisheries due to changes in reservoir elevations or water retention~~
35 ~~times. The operating agencies should report annually to the Council on~~
36 ~~the nature and extent of impacts to Lake Roosevelt from this summer~~
37 ~~operation at Hungry Horse and Libby. The Council will analyze this~~
38 ~~information, and if the Council decides the impacts to Lake Roosevelt~~
39 ~~fisheries are unacceptably adverse, the Council will make additional~~
40 ~~recommendations on operations to the federal operating agencies.~~

- 41
42
43 • **Operate Grand Coulee Dam** from July through December consistent with
44 the **2008 FCRPS bBiological eOpinion** operations and with ordinary
45 hydrosystem operations, with the following considerations:
46

- Draft evenly from Lake Roosevelt to the target elevations **of 1278 or 1280 feet by the end of August. As specified in Washington’s Columbia River Basin Water Management Program, by the end of August Lake Roosevelt will be drafted by an additional 1.0 foot in non-drought years and by about 1.8 feet in drought years.**¹⁶. As much as possible, manage the reservoir and dam discharges to minimize fluctuations and ramping rates and produce steady flows across each season and each day to minimize reservoir fluctuations and ramping rates. ~~Attempt to draft no lower than 1283 feet by the end of August.~~
- From September through December, attempt to ~~maintain a minimum elevation of 1283 feet to~~ maximize water retention times and protect kokanee access and spawning. Federal operators, fish and wildlife managers, and others should consult with the Council to determine how to provide the biological benefits **above of a 1283 operation** while meeting biological opinion requirements, including chum flows, and operating to protect flows for the Hanford Reach.
- Attempt to maximize water retention times from June to December of 40 to 60 days, or the maximum historically achievable for each month.
- Two high priorities for Grand Coulee through the year should be to contribute to the establishment and protection of the necessary conditions in the Hanford Reach described above and to refill by the end of June. Summer and fall operations should be consistent with these priorities.

- **Dworshak Dam**

- Operate Dworshak Dam consistent with the provisions of the 20080 **FCRPS** Biological Opinion, as implemented through the Corps of Engineers ~~acting as a member of, and in coordination~~ with **input from**, the ~~Regional~~ **Forum** Technical Management Team, **as follows:** ~~and do so in a manner that a) recognizes the concerns and interests of the Nez Perce Tribe, the Idaho Department of Fish and Game, the Idaho Department of Water Resources, and the Idaho Legislature, as expressed in the jointly approved Idaho Dworshak Operations Plan, adopted December 21, 2000; and b) that accommodates the salmonid and resident fish objectives of the Council’s program and the 1980 Northwest Power Act.~~
 - Priority should be to refill the project by June 30.
 - For flow augmentation purposes, Dworshak should be drafted to elevation 1535 feet by the end of August and to elevation 1520 feet by the end of September, unless modified per the agreement between the United States and the Nez Perce Tribe for water use in Dworshak Reservoir.
 - During the summer flow augmentation operation, regulate Dworshak discharges and outflow temperatures with the goals of:
 - a) attempting to maintain water temperatures in the Lower Granite

¹⁶ The definition of a drought year in this case is when the March water supply forecast for the April through September period at The Dalles is less than 60 million acre-feet (MAF).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15

Dam tailwater at or below the State of Washington’s water quality standard of 20 degrees Celsius (68 degrees Fahrenheit), and b) remaining within the State of Idaho’s TDG water quality standard of 110 percent saturation.

~~oThe Independent Science Advisory Board and the Independent Economic Analysis Board shall review the operation of Dworshak Dam to assess the adverse impacts of those operations on resident fish and wildlife and the adverse impacts on the Clearwater County regional economy because of impacts to resident fish and wildlife. The Council will review the ISAB and IEAB reports, consult with the relevant fish and wildlife managers, and make recommendations to Bonneville on any additional fish and wildlife mitigation responsibilities deemed appropriate under the Power Act.~~

1 **9. Climate Change Planning Considerations**

2
3 **Climate change could have significant effects on mainstem Columbia and**
4 **Snake river flows in terms of runoff timing, water quantity and temperature.**
5 **Possible changes in regional snowpack, river flows and reservoir elevations**
6 **due to climate change could have a profound impact on the success of**
7 **restoration efforts and the status of Columbia Basin fish and wildlife**
8 **populations. The Council acknowledges that global climate change is not**
9 **directly caused by the hydrosystem. However, to the extent climate change**
10 **may further adversely affect fish and wildlife affected by the hydrosystem, it**
11 **is appropriate for the Council to seek the best available scientific knowledge**
12 **regarding the effects of climate change and to consider that scientific data**
13 **when recommending program strategies and implementation measures.**

14
15 **The Federal action agencies, in coordination and collaboration with others,**
16 **should:**

- 17
18 • **Support the advancement of runoff forecasting techniques. Continue**
19 **to encourage, monitor, and promote public awareness of pertinent**
20 **climate change research and information and assess how it should**
21 **influence program mitigation efforts.**
- 22
23 • **Assess whether climate change effects are altering or likely to alter**
24 **critical river flows or other habitat attributes in a way that could**
25 **significantly affect fish or wildlife important to this program,¹⁷ either**
26 **directly or by affecting the success of current mitigation efforts.**
- 27
28 • **If so, evaluate whether alternative water management scenarios,**
29 **including changes in flood control operations, could minimize the**
30 **potential effects of climate change on mainstem hydrology. Evaluate**
31 **the effectiveness and feasibility of possible actions to mitigate effects**
32 **of climate change, including selective withdrawal from cool/cold**
33 **storage reservoirs to reduce water temperatures or other actions to**
34 **create or protect cool water refugia in mainstem reaches or**
35 **reservoirs.**
- 36
37 • **Under similar conditions, investigate the feasibility of mitigating**
38 **climate change impacts in the estuary and plume through changes in**
39 **hydrosystem operations, including changes in flood control**
40 **operations.**

¹⁷ "Fish or wildlife important to this program" means fish or wildlife already adversely affected by the hydrosystem and thus the subject of program mitigation efforts.

1 **10. Control of Predators**

2
3 **a. Piscivorous predator control**

- 4 • Bonneville should continue to implement annually the base
5 program and continue the general increase in reward structure in
6 the northern pikeminnow sport-reward fishery consistent with the
7 increase starting in 2004. The action agencies should evaluate the
8 effectiveness of focused pikeminnow removals at The Dalles and
9 John Day dams and implement as warranted. Scoping of focused
10 pikeminnow removals at other mainstem dams or in the lower
11 Columbia River will be based on evaluations and adaptive
12 management principles with input from NOAA Fisheries, other
13 regional fisheries managers, and the Council.
- 14
- 15 • The federal action agencies will work cooperatively with NOAA
16 Fisheries, states, tribes and the Council to review, evaluate,
17 develop and implement strategies to reduce non-native piscivorous
18 predation on salmon and steelhead, especially by smallmouth bass,
19 channel catfish and walleye.

20
21 **b. Avian predator control**

- 22 • The federal action agencies should continue efforts to reduce the
23 number of Caspian terns on East Sand Island in the lower
24 Columbia River and estuary by implementing the U.S. Fish and
25 Wildlife Service Caspian Tern Management Plan.
- 26
- 27 • The federal action agencies should develop a double-breasted
28 cormorant management plan encompassing additional research,
29 development of a conceptual management plan, and
30 implementation of warranted actions in the lower Columbia River
31 and estuary.
- 32
- 33 • The federal action agencies should develop an avian management
34 plan (for double-breasted cormorants, Caspian terns, and other
35 avian species) for Corps-owned lands and associated shallow-
36 water habitat areas in the mid-Columbia area.
- 37
- 38 • The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers should continue to implement
39 and improve avian deterrent programs at all lower Snake and
40 Columbia River dams.

41
42 **c. Marine mammal predator control**

- 43 • The U.S. Army Corps of Engineers should take action to improve
44 the exclusion of sea lions at all main adult fish ladder entrances at
45 Bonneville Dam.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

- **The Corps should continue to support land and water-based harassment efforts by NOAA Fisheries, Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife, Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, and tribes to keep sea lions away from the area immediately downstream of Bonneville Dam.**
- **The federal action agencies should also evaluate the extent of marine mammal predation on salmonids, sturgeon and Pacific lamprey in the lower Columbia River from below Bonneville Dam to the mouth of the river.**
- **Lethal take to control marine mammal predators consistent with state and federal law is appropriate when non-lethal methods of control are not successful and the adverse impacts are significant.**

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31

11. Non-Native Species Evaluation and Control

The Council acknowledges invasive non-native species pose direct threats to the program’s fish and wildlife restoration efforts through competition, predation and habitat modification. In addition to threatening native fish and wildlife habitat, aquatic non-native species can invade and significantly threaten infrastructure at hydroelectric dams and fish passage facilities in the Columbia River Basin. Currently, the greatest known threat to the FCRPS from aquatic nuisance species is introduction into the basin of the zebra or quagga mussel, followed by Eurasian milfoil. Once established, management actions taken in other locales have shown little success in removing or controlling these invasive non-native species. Accordingly, the Council expects:

- Where aquatic non-native species pose both a direct threat to the hydropower system **and/or** to native fish species, federal action agencies should support ongoing federal, state, and tribal efforts to prevent, monitor, control and minimize the spread of non-native species, including zebra or quagga mussels and Eurasian milfoil, that threaten the success of fish and wildlife program measures.
- The federal action agencies, states, tribes and the Council will review, evaluate and develop strategies to reduce competition from non-native species, such as shad, with juvenile and adult salmonids.
- Lethal take to control **non-native** predators or competitors consistent with state and federal law is appropriate when non-lethal methods of control are not successful and the adverse impacts are significant.

12. Mainstem Monitoring and Evaluation

- The **Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and Reporting strategies in the basinwide provisions 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program** describes a general strategy for monitoring and evaluation **across the program, including guidelines for collecting data**. The emphasis is on developing and implementing **criteria standards and procedures** for monitoring and evaluating management activities **and reporting results relevant to the program framework and biological objectives**. ~~that are aimed at improving habitat conditions for fish and wildlife. The goals are to determine whether the biological objectives of the program are being achieved at the basinwide level and at lower levels, and to make sure that the evaluation information is used to adapt or change management strategies that are not achieving the biological objectives.~~ The monitoring and evaluation elements stated earlier in the various mainstem strategies, and the general provisions in this section, are intended to be consistent with this general **monitoring and evaluation** strategy.
- The Council may assist the federal agencies in reviewing the results of research, monitoring and evaluation efforts to identify whether actions taken are achieving the **hydrosystem** performance standards and objectives in the ~~2008~~ **FCRPS** Biological Opinions, and also whether the research and evaluation results confirm or call into question the soundness of the standards themselves. **The Council incorporates the NOAA Fisheries 2008 Biological Opinion juvenile and adult passage performance standards for federal mainstem dams into the Program.**¹⁸ **These survival standards should also apply to unlisted salmonids passing federal dams.**

¹⁸ The juvenile fish performance standards are an average across Snake River and lower Columbia River dams of 96 percent average dam passage survival for spring Chinook and steelhead (spring migrants) and 93 percent average dam passage survival for Snake River fall Chinook subyearlings (summer migrants). The adult fish passage performance standards can be found in Table 7 of RPA No. 51 - Hydrosystem Research, Monitoring and Evaluation of the NOAA **Fisheries** 2008 FCRPS Biological Opinion.

1 | **13. Research**

- 2 |
- 3 | • **Fish and Wildlife Program. The Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and**
- 4 | **Reporting strategies in the basinwide provisions above** ~~The 2000 Fish and~~
- 5 | ~~Wildlife Program~~ describes a **strategic** ~~general~~ approach regarding research
- 6 | related to the **P**program, including **identification of the development by the**
- 7 | ~~Council of a basinwide research plan that identifies~~ key uncertainties for the
- 8 | program and its biological objectives, ~~and the steps needed to resolve these~~
- 9 | ~~uncertainties, coordination of this overall plan with particular research~~
- 10 | ~~elements, including ocean research, and a call to make research results and~~
- 11 | ~~other information important to the program more readily available.~~ The
- 12 | research elements stated earlier in the various mainstem strategies, and the
- 13 | general provisions in this section, are intended to be based on, and consistent
- 14 | with, this general **research** strategy.
- 15 |
- 16 | • **Research aimed at optimizing fish and wildlife benefits and energy**
- 17 | **production.** Actions taken to benefit fish and wildlife should also consider
- 18 | and minimize impacts to the Columbia basin hydropower system if at all
- 19 | possible. The goal should be to try to optimize both values to the greatest
- 20 | degree possible. Thus, a high priority for mainstem **passage** research in
- 21 | general should be to try to determine what actions can be taken to provide
- 22 | both high fish and wildlife and energy benefits, or at least to increase one set
- 23 | of benefits without degrading the other. As an example, spill is an operation
- 24 | for fish with a **significant** ~~serious~~-energy impact for the power system. As
- 25 | described above in the strategy on spill, **an optimal juvenile fish passage** ~~this~~
- 26 | operation should be **developed at each project and** examined, **in**
- 27 | **conjunction with surface passage and other passage improvements,** to
- 28 | determine whether spill can be more effectively utilized to **improve** ~~help~~-fish
- 29 | **survival** and lessen its impacts to energy production.
- 30 |
- 31 | • **Approach to prioritizing research ideas and proposals.** In deciding what
- 32 | mainstem research to fund or implement, the assigning of priorities should
- 33 | take into account a wide array of factors, such as:
- 34 |
- 35 | ○ potential biological benefits to fish and wildlife, **especially whether a fish**
- 36 | **passage project will help meet the juvenile or adult dam passage**
- 37 | **survival performance standards;**
- 38 | ○ widespread scientific value — can what is learned be applied to other
- 39 | situations?
- 40 | ○ management application;
- 41 | ○ degree of uncertainty of the question asked;
- 42 | ○ cost of the research;
- 43 | ○ cost of the proposal on power system;
- 44 | ○ potential cost to implement the results of research;
- 45 | ○ level of completion/duplication;

- 1 ○ legal relevance — does the research activity respond to the biological
- 2 opinion and/or to the fish and wildlife program, or to other legal
- 3 requirements?
- 4 | ○ ~~“feasibility doability”~~ in the technical sense — is the proposal a reasonable
- 5 way to complete this activity?
- 6 | ○ ~~“feasibility doability”~~ in the legal/institutional sense.
- 7

8 | Research proposals should be evaluated against each of these important elements,
9 with the results combined in a variety of ways to expose the weight of different
10 | variables. A broad representation of **regional entities** ~~people and interests~~ should
11 | be involved in prioritizing proposals, including **review by** the independent
12 | scientific **review** panels. ~~People at the p~~**Policy-makers** ~~ing level~~ should be more
13 | involved in the final decisions on long-term and annual research plans.

1 **14. Fish Passage Center**

2
3 The ~~program mainstem plan~~ calls for the continued operation of the Fish Passage
4 Center (Center). The primary purpose of the Center is to provide technical
5 assistance and information to fish and wildlife agencies and tribes in particular,
6 and the public in general, on matters related to **the implementation of water**
7 **management, spill, and passage measures in the program’s Mainstem**
8 **Plan.**~~juvenile and adult salmon and steelhead passage through the mainstem~~
9 ~~hydrosystem. This information relates to the implementation of the water~~
10 ~~management measures in the Council’s fish and wildlife program.~~

11 In performing this function, the Center shall:

- 12 • Assemble, organize, make publicly available, and maintain the primary
13 archive of the smolt monitoring program data;
- 14 • Participate in the development of ~~Plan and implement~~ the annual smolt
15 monitoring program **implementation plan, and assist in the implementation**
16 **of the program**;
- 17 • Assemble, organize **and** make publicly accessible, data from other primary
18 sources, and conduct analyses as requested ~~and as needed~~, to meet the
19 information needs of the fish and wildlife agencies, tribes and public with
20 respect to **water management, spill, and passage**~~Gather, organize, analyze,~~
21 ~~house, and make widely available monitoring and research information related~~
22 ~~to juvenile and adult passage, and to the implementation of the water~~
23 ~~management and passage measures that are part of the Council’s program~~;
- 24 • Provide technical information necessary to assist the agencies and tribes in
25 formulating in-season flow and spill requests that implement the **water**
26 ~~management~~ measures in the Council’s program, while also assisting the
27 agencies and tribes in making sure that operating criteria for storage reservoirs
28 are satisfied; ~~and~~
- 29 • In general, provide the technical assistance necessary to coordinate
30 recommendations for storage reservoir and river operations that, to the extent
31 possible, avoid potential conflicts between anadromous and resident fish; **and-**
32
- 33 • **Archive and make publicly accessible the data used in developing all**
34 **analytical results produced by the Center, associating the specific data**
35 **with the respective analyses.**

36 **Many questions pertaining to water management and fish passage in the**
37 **mainstem Columbia and Snake rivers contain both scientific and policy**
38

1 | **aspects. The Center should confine itself to dealing only with the scientific**
2 | **aspects of issues.**

3 |
4 | The Council has established an oversight board for the Center, with representation
5 | from NOAA Fisheries, state fish and wildlife agencies, tribes, the Council, and
6 | others **to ensure that the Center carries out its functions consistent with the**
7 | **Council's program**~~to provide policy guidance for the Center and to ensure that~~
8 | ~~the Center carries out its functions in a way that assures regional accountability~~
9 | ~~and compatibility with the regional data management system.~~ The oversight
10 | board's responsibilities will include conducting an annual review of the
11 | performance of the Center and developing a goal-oriented plan for **the Center's**
12 | **operation to assure regional accountability and compatibility with the**
13 | **regional data management system, as well as program consistency**~~next year's~~
14 | ~~operation.~~ **The oversight board will also work with the Center and the ISAB**
15 | **to organize a regular system of independent science review of appropriate**
16 | **Center products.** The Center shall prepare an annual report to the oversight
17 | board and the Council, summarizing its activities and accomplishments. There
18 | will be no other oversight board or board of directors for the Center.
19 |

20 | Operation of the Center shall include funds for a manager and for technical and
21 | clerical support in order to perform its stated functions. The fish passage manager
22 | will be selected based on his or her knowledge of the multiple purposes of the
23 | regional hydropower system, and of the water needs of fish and wildlife, as well
24 | as the ability to communicate and work with fish and wildlife agencies, tribes, the
25 | Council, project operators, regulators, and other interested parties, including
26 | members of the public. **The manager shall be supervised by the contracting**
27 | **entity selected by Bonneville, and the contractor shall have the authority and**
28 | **obligation to conduct an annual performance review of the manager, after**
29 | **consultation with the oversight board.**~~The fish passage manager will be~~
30 | ~~selected by, and be subordinate to, the Executive Director of the Columbia Basin~~
31 | ~~Fish and Wildlife Authority (Authority), in consultation with the oversight board.~~
32 | ~~The Executive Director of the Authority and the Chair of the Council (or the~~
33 | ~~Chair's designee) will conduct an annual review of the manager's performance.~~
34 |

35 | **Operation of the Center should include a person with expertise in analyzing**
36 | **storage reservoir operations and in-season impacts on resident fish from**
37 | **operations of the Federal Columbia River Power System. When carrying out**
38 | **its functions, the Center should consult with resident fish managers who have**
39 | **knowledge and expertise on reservoir operations and resident fish**
40 | **requirements.**

41 |
42 | The Center shall continue to provide an empirical database of fish passage
43 | information for use by the region, not just by fish and wildlife managers. No
44 | information collected by the Center, and no analyses by the Center, shall be
45 | considered proprietary. The oversight board and the fish and wildlife managers
46 | will ensure that the database conforms to appropriate standards for data

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15

management, including review of the database by an appropriate scientific or data review group. ~~The fish and wildlife managers will provide a liaison position at the Authority between the public and the Center to ensure that all parties have timely and thorough access to the database.~~ The Council may revise the functions of the Center as the region develops a comprehensive data management system.

~~To assist the oversight board, the Executive Director of the Columbia Basin Fish and Wildlife Authority, in consultation with the fish and wildlife managers, will propose to the oversight board candidates for a technical advisory committee, whose purpose will be to establish technical protocols and scientific requirements for the Center and to review the scientific and technical aspects of the performance of the Center. The oversight board will select the technical advisory committee from the names submitted by the Executive Director of the Authority. The technical advisory committee will report to the oversight board.~~

1 | **15. Annual and In-Season ~~Decisionmaking~~Decision-making**

- 2 |
- 3 | • Through the biological opinions, the federal agencies have established a
- 4 | ~~regional~~ implementation structure for deciding on annual operation plans for
- 5 | fish and wildlife, in-season management of hydrosystem operations for fish
- 6 | and wildlife, and recommendations to Congress for funding for ~~fish~~ passage
- 7 | improvements ~~at mainstem Columbia and Snake river hydropower~~
- 8 | ~~projects~~. At present, this decision structure is insufficient to integrate fish and
- 9 | power considerations in a timely, objective and effective way, and it focuses
- 10 | on listed fish with ~~less~~ consideration for unlisted anadromous and resident
- 11 | fish species and wildlife. The Council ~~continues to~~ recommends to the federal
- 12 | agencies that this implementation structure, which includes the ~~Regional~~
- 13 | ~~Forum~~ Technical Management Team, ~~System Configuration Team~~, and the
- 14 | Implementation Team, ~~should~~ be jointly sponsored ~~or co-chaired~~ by the
- 15 | Council and the federal agencies. The implementation structure should allow
- 16 | for effective participation in these considerations by the relevant federal
- 17 | agencies, the Council and states, the tribes of the Columbia River Basin and
- 18 | other affected entities in an ~~open highly~~ public forum. ~~Decisions made in the~~
- 19 | ~~Regional Forum should be transparent to regional~~
- 20 | ~~participants~~. ~~Discussions to this end began in 2001, but then were overcome~~
- 21 | ~~by events. The Council will re-initiate the discussions to jointly sponsor these~~
- 22 | ~~coordination teams.~~

23 |

24 | The Council recommends that the ~~Regional Forum~~ ~~teams should continue to~~

25 | ~~then~~ broaden ~~their~~ focus to improve in-season hydrosystem operations

26 | ~~decisionmaking~~ ~~decision-making~~, in the following ways:

- 27 |
- 28 | • Include expertise in both biological and power system issues.
- 29 |
- 30 | • Where appropriate, ~~h~~Have the technical capability to analyze and present
- 31 | power supply forecasts, hydrosystem operational alternatives, and other power
- 32 | related issues. The Council should play a significant role in this.
- 33 |
- 34 | • Have the technical capability to analyze differing hydrosystem operation
- 35 | proposals relative to impacts on salmon, steelhead, sturgeon and resident fish
- 36 | migration, survival, spawning, and rearing, and relative to impacts on wildlife.
- 37 |
- 38 | • Regularly schedule meetings, as often as required, to deal with short-term,
- 39 | real-time decisions (e.g., weekly in-~~season~~ migration ~~issues~~ ~~season~~), as well as
- 40 | middle and long-term issues (e.g., addressing longer-term reliability issues in
- 41 | a way that removes risk to providing operations to meet requirements of
- 42 | salmon).
- 43 |

1 |
2 |
3 |
4 |

- Operate with a defined set of ~~decisionmaking~~**decision-making** criteria and hold participants accountable for the decisions they make, according to the established **Regional Forum procedures**~~criteria~~.

1 **16. Mid-Columbia Hydroelectric Projects**
2
3

4 **NOAA Fisheries and FERC have approved salmon and steelhead Habitat**
5 **Conservation Plans (HCPs) developed by Douglas County PUD for its Wells**
6 **Hydroelectric Project and by Chelan County PUD for its Rocky Reach and**
7 **Rock Island Dams. The public utility districts developed these HCPs while**
8 **working cooperatively with NOAA Fisheries Service, the U.S. Fish and**
9 **Wildlife Service, the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife, the**
10 **Yakima Nation, the Colville Tribes and various local governments and non-**
11 **governmental organizations. The HCPs call for implementation of a 50-year**
12 **plan of fish bypass systems, spill at the projects, off-site hatchery programs**
13 **and evaluations, and habitat restoration work in mid-Columbia tributary**
14 **streams, with a goal of having no net impact on mid-Columbia salmon and**
15 **steelhead runs. The Council recognizes the performance standards and the**
16 **mainstem spill and bypass provisions as part of the baseline objectives and**
17 **measures in the Columbia mainstem program. The Council expects the**
18 **federal action agencies and others to work with the public utility districts to**
19 **assist in successful implementation of the HCPs.**~~The Council will review and,~~
20 ~~as appropriate, include in the program settlement agreements for the mid-~~
21 ~~Columbia hydroelectric projects.~~

22
23 **In relicensing and ESA review proceedings for its Priest Rapids and**
24 **Wapum hydroelectric projects, Grant County PUD developed and**
25 **obtained approval of a similar set of performance standards and operational**
26 **and mitigation measures, including spill and bypass measures to benefit**
27 **salmon and steelhead that pass above the projects and flow operations to**
28 **benefit Hanford Reach fall chinook spawning and rearing below Priest**
29 **Rapids. These operations have been described and reviewed in several multi-**
30 **governmental agreements and biological opinions over the last decade. The**
31 **Council recognizes the performance standards and these mainstem flow, spill**
32 **and bypass provisions as part of the baseline objectives and measures in the**
33 **Columbia mainstem program. The Council expects the federal action**
34 **agencies and others to work with the public utility district to assist in**
35 **successful implementation.**

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

17. Hells Canyon Hydroelectric Project

Idaho Power Company's Hells Canyon hydropower complex, consisting of three hydroelectric projects on the mainstem Snake River, is currently undergoing FERC re-licensing and ESA Section 7 consultation. The Council will review the outcome of the FERC proceeding and completed biological opinion and, as appropriate, include in the program relevant provisions for the Hells Canyon Hydroelectric Project.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9

18. Reintroduction of Anadromous Fish in Blocked Areas

The Council recognizes and will monitor current efforts to reintroduce Pacific salmon and steelhead into blocked areas of the Columbia River Basin. Reintroduction of anadromous fish into blocked areas has the potential to increase the diversity, complexity **capacity, and productivity of salmonid habitat. The Council will **continue to evaluate the feasibility** of salmon and steelhead reintroduction, consistent with the **objectives in the** appropriate subbasin plans.**

1 **REVISED TRANSITION PROVISIONS**

2 ~~In the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program amendments, the Council provided that all~~
3 ~~measures in the program that were “not directly superseded” by the adoption of the~~
4 ~~basinwide provisions in the amendments would “continue to have force and effect~~
5 ~~until”:~~

6 ~~1)A subbasin plan has been adopted by the Council for the subbasin in which the~~
7 ~~project [or measure] is located (or, for research and mainstem measures, a research~~
8 ~~or mainstem plan);~~

9 ~~2)The measure has been specifically repealed in a subsequent rulemaking; or~~

10 ~~3)Three years have elapsed following the final approval of this program, whichever~~
11 ~~occurs first.~~

12 ~~The Council is both applying and revising these transition provisions at this time, in~~
13 ~~this way:~~

14 ~~•Final adoption of the mainstem plan amendments to the fish and wildlife program~~
15 ~~will supersede all provisions, objectives, and measures in the Council’s 1994-95~~
16 ~~Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program that relate to systemwide~~
17 ~~hydrosystem operations, systemwide water management, mainstem flows, mainstem~~
18 ~~and storage reservoir operations, spill, bypass systems, smolt monitoring, mainstem~~
19 ~~operations research and evaluation, and other matters related to juvenile and adult~~
20 ~~salmon migration through the mainstem, including all of Sections 5 and 6 of the~~
21 ~~1994-95 program.~~

22 ~~•All other specific measures in the 1994-95 program that have not been directly~~
23 ~~superseded by the adoption of the 2000 Fish and Wildlife Program amendments or~~
24 ~~by the adoption of the mainstem plan amendments remain in effect until 1) a~~
25 ~~subbasin plan has been adopted by the Council for the area in which the measures is~~
26 ~~located; or 2) the measure has been specifically repealed in a subsequent program~~
27 ~~amendment process. This includes any resident fish substitution or mitigation~~
28 ~~measures, such as the Lake Roosevelt monitoring or production programs, that~~
29 ~~occur in the mainstem but that are not directly related to systemwide operations or~~
30 ~~salmon migration.~~

31 ~~•With adoption of the mainstem plan amendments, the Council deletes the three-~~
32 ~~year sunset clause from the Transition Provisions in the 2000 Fish and Wildlife~~
33 ~~Program amendments. No specific measure in the Fish and Wildlife Program prior~~
34 ~~to the adoption of the 2000 Program amendments will expire simply because three~~
35 ~~years have elapsed from the final approval of the amendments.~~

VII. Subbasins

The preceding sections of this program address fish and wildlife needs ~~on two different levels: the Columbia River Basin as a whole and at the next level, the 11 ecological provinces within the basin. This section addresses the third level, the more than 50 subbasins within those ecological provinces. For each of these subbasins a locally developed “plan” will be adopted into the program. Each plan will have its own vision and biological objectives and will identify specific actions needed for fish and wildlife in that subbasin. The plans must be consistent with the visions, biological objectives, and strategies adopted at the basin and province levels, but otherwise are free to make unique choices and reflect local policies and priorities. The subbasin plans will beat the basin and province level, and in the ocean, estuary, and mainstem. This section addresses the more than fifty subbasins within the ecological provinces.~~

During the period 2002-2004, fifty-seven subbasin plans were developed by subbasin planning entities consisting of fish and wildlife managers, and other regional and local organizations. Each plan contains a vision and biological objectives for that subbasin and identifies specific actions necessary to protect, mitigate, and enhance fish and wildlife in that subbasin. The subbasin plans thus reflect local policies and priorities while remaining consistent with the basinwide vision, biological objectives, and strategies.

Subbasin plans provide the basis for review and funding of most fish and wildlife projects in this program. The Council expects that projects implemented through the program will be consistent with the goals, limiting factors, and actions identified in the subbasin plans.

A. Elements of Subbasin Plans

- **A 10-15 year management plan (adopted into the program);**
- **A subbasin assessment providing a description of historical and existing conditions;**
- **A clear and comprehensive inventory of existing projects and past accomplishments;**

B. Implementing Plans at the Subbasin Level

Subbasin plans provide the context for project review for Bonneville funding each year as well as by the fish and wildlife agencies and tribes, the Independent Scientific Review Panel (ISRP) and the Council. The ISRP will use the subbasin plans to determine if projects support, and are consistent with, the plans. Subbasin plans also provide an opportunity to integrate and coordinate projects and programs funded by entities other than Bonneville, including Canadian entities in transboundary areas of subbasins.

1 **C. Development and Submission of Subbasin Plans for Areas without**
2 **Subbasin Plans**

3
4 The Council supports the development of subbasin plans in areas where a plan does
5 not exist. Subbasin plans proposed for adoption in the program, whether funded
6 through the program or not, must undergo scientific review and must follow the
7 guidelines set forth on the Council’s website at www.nwcouncil.org. All subbasin
8 plans proposed for adoption must be consistent with the Council’s program and
9 should take into account, to the extent possible, impacts from climate change and
10 human population growth and movement.

11
12 The Northwest Power Act does not require consensus for a recommendation to be
13 submitted to the Council. It is possible that different parties will submit different
14 plans for the same subbasin. The level of support within a subbasin for a particular
15 plan can be an important factor in gauging how well the plan meets the standards of
16 the Act and whether the plan can be effectively implemented. Thus, the Council
17 strongly encourages interested parties to work together.

18
19 The Act directs the Council to give special consideration to the recommendations of
20 tribal, state, and federal fish and wildlife management entities when considering
21 matters related to fish and wildlife. Therefore, subbasin plans should be developed
22 with the participation of fish and wildlife managers with jurisdiction in the
23 subbasin.

24
25 **D. Updating Existing Subbasin Plans**

26
27 The Council did not seek recommendations to update existing subbasin plans as
28 part of this amendment process. The Council will consult with subbasin planners
29 before the next amendment process to determine the need to update existing
30 subbasin plans.

31
32 The Council recognizes work has continued in some subbasins to refine and update
33 management plans. The Council therefore will accept recommendations to update
34 existing subbasin management plans until November 1, 2010. This is a voluntary
35 process and will not have specific, dedicated funding.

36
37 Recommendations to update existing management plans must be received by
38 November 1, 2010. The Council will adopt or reject the recommended management
39 plans by November 1, 2011.

40
41 Updated management plans must undergo science review and follow all Council
42 guidelines as set forth on the Council’s website.

43
44 **E. Developing Subbasin Summary Tables**
45

1 The Council received recommendations from the Fish and Wildlife agencies and
2 tribes to incorporate templates summarizing the Council’s subbasin plans into the
3 Fish and Wildlife program.

4
5 The Council supports the development of subbasin plan summaries and will initiate
6 a process, separate from the program amendment process, soliciting public
7 comment on the summaries recommended by the fish and wildlife agencies and
8 tribes. The Council seeks comment on any data gaps and inconsistencies including
9 any new data based on recovery plans that have come into existence since the
10 subbasin management plans were adopted.

11
12 While new subbasin data can only be incorporated via the formal program
13 amendment processes set forth above in the sections titled “Development and
14 Submission of Subbasin Plans for Areas without Subbasin Plans” and “Updating
15 Existing Subbasin Plans”, the Council will review all comments and, depending on
16 the nature of the public comments received, will consider posting the subbasin
17 summaries on the Council’s website.

18
19 ~~Subbasin plans will be reviewed for their consistency with biological objectives and
20 strategies at the basin and province levels. Similarly, as subbasin plans are adopted into
21 the program, higher level objectives and strategies may be modified to reflect and
22 accommodate the information and initiatives of the plan.~~

23
24 ~~Subbasin plans will also be the context for review of proposals for Bonneville funding
25 each year by the fish and wildlife agencies and tribes, the Independent Scientific Review
26 Panel and the Council. Once subbasin plans are approved, all of these entities will be able
27 to review the projects proposed for Bonneville funding to determine if they are
28 scientifically sound in light of existing and desired ecological conditions in the subbasin
29 and the goals and objectives presented in subbasin plans.~~

30 31 ~~1. Required Elements of Subbasin Plans~~

32
33 ~~For purposes of the program a subbasin level plan must include the following three
34 general components in order to be eligible for adoption into the fish and wildlife
35 program:~~

- 36
37 ~~● A 10-15 year management plan.~~

38
39 ~~Each of these components is discussed below. The Technical Appendix contains a
40 detailed description of each element and of the process that the Council will use to
41 develop the subbasin level of the program. A template for the plan will be developed
42 collaboratively and included in the Technical Appendix.~~

43
44 ~~It is anticipated that subbasin plans will be revised and updated every three to five years
45 as new information becomes available and conditions change.~~

46 ~~2. General Principles for Subbasin Plans~~

- ~~Planning in any subbasin will start from the information contained in subbasin summaries and existing plans and documents. The program will only fund new planning activities where there are clear gaps and omissions.~~
- ~~The Council's subbasin plans will not duplicate plans that have been developed or will soon be developed by others, including states, tribes, or the federal government.~~
- ~~Wherever possible and scientifically warranted, the Council will adopt existing plans into the subbasin plans.~~
- ~~The final subbasin plan to be adopted by the Council should enjoy a wide range of support from all interested parties.~~

~~3. Subbasin Assessment~~

~~The assessment is a technical phase that describes existing and historic resource conditions and characteristics. The assessment scope covers both aquatic and terrestrial environments and addresses anadromous and resident fish, and wildlife. This initial assessment will rely primarily on existing information already compiled by fish and wildlife agencies, water resource agencies, and other interested parties within the subbasins.~~

~~A template for subbasin assessment has been developed for this program through the collaborative efforts of regional scientists. This template has broad support, and will be accepted for both the plans adopted as part of the fish and wildlife program, for ESA recovery planning activities, and for water quality management plans under the Clean Water Act.~~

~~A full copy of the assessment template is contained in the Technical Appendix. The template has seven separate sections:~~

- ~~Background and Introduction~~
- ~~Subbasin description~~
- ~~Habitat condition and trends, historic and current (at a level of detail consistent with the 6th level habitat unit code, HUC)~~
- ~~Synthesis and interpretation (narrative descriptions coupled with maps indicating habitats and species of interest)~~
- ~~Summary~~
- ~~Assessment validation and monitoring~~

1 ● ————References

2
3 ~~The Council will provide assistance and work with the region's federal, state, and~~
4 ~~tribal fish and wildlife managers and all other interested parties to complete~~
5 ~~assessments, using this template, for each of the subbasins by early 2001. These~~
6 ~~assessments will then be made available to local, state, federal, and tribal planners to~~
7 ~~use as a foundation for developing the management plan component of subbasin~~
8 ~~plans.~~

9
10 ~~The Council is aware that there is a large number of watershed and subbasin level~~
11 ~~activities throughout the basin that are using a wide variety of formats for~~
12 ~~assessments and planning. The Council intends to rely on the information gathered in~~
13 ~~those activities as much as possible and does not intend this template to undermine or~~
14 ~~displace these on-going efforts. However, for purposes of this program it is important~~
15 ~~to compile this information in a consistent format that permits the coordination of~~
16 ~~Bonneville-funded activities and planning under the Endangered Species Act and~~
17 ~~Clean Water Act.~~

18
19 ~~The Council expects that the initial assessments in some subbasins will encounter~~
20 ~~significant data gaps requiring additional information. In such cases, the subbasin~~
21 ~~plan should identify this need, and include the measures necessary to meet it. In all~~
22 ~~cases, it is expected that the body of information on which the assessment is based~~
23 ~~will continue to grow and that, as a regular part of each project review and funding~~
24 ~~cycle, the assessments and plans will be updated.~~

25
26 ~~Most of the fish species of interest for subbasin planning move beyond their~~
27 ~~subbasins of origin for at least some stages of their life cycle. Subbasin planners will~~
28 ~~need information and analytical tools that allow them to understand the biological~~
29 ~~constraints on their fish populations that stem from areas outside the subbasin, such as~~
30 ~~mainstem survival rates, ocean and inriver harvest rates, effects of interactions with~~
31 ~~fish from other subbasins, and ocean conditions. The Council will ensure that~~
32 ~~subbasin planners have access to information of this type.~~

33
34 **4. Inventory of Existing Activities**

35
36 ~~In most subbasins, there are already several programs underway that in some way are~~
37 ~~involved in watershed planning or restoration. The Council believes that the projects~~
38 ~~funded under its program should take into account these existing programs and be~~
39 ~~coordinated with them. This coordination will yield a more scientifically and~~
40 ~~biologically sound fish and wildlife plan and reduce costs.~~

41
42 ~~Thus, the second general component of a subbasin level plan will be a description of~~
43 ~~the existing fish and wildlife and habitat projects that are occurring, or have occurred,~~
44 ~~in the recent past in the subbasin. This element should include: 1) all activities that~~
45 ~~are taking place or are planned in the subbasin and 2) objectives related to protecting,~~
46 ~~mitigating or enhancing fish, wildlife, or their habitats, regardless of funding source~~

1 or management entity. Both implementation and planning activities should be
2 addressed. The description for each project or activity should include:

- 3
- 4 ● a description of activity, including its term, its monitoring and evaluation
5 elements, and its goals and objectives
- 6
- 7 ● identification of management or lead entities for each activity
- 8
- 9 ● identification of authorizing process or entity (Northwest Power Planning
10 Council, National Marine Fisheries Service, Federal Energy Regulatory Commission,
11 state watershed planning agency, etc.)
- 12
- 13 ● identification of relationship to other activities in the subbasin
- 14
- 15 ● identification of funding source
- 16
- 17 ● a synopsis of accomplishments or failures of activity related to established
18 goals and objectives where possible
- 19
- 20 ● identification of limiting factors or ecological processes the activity is designed to
21 address
- 22

23 **5. Management Plan**

24

25 The management plan is the heart of the subbasin plan. It sets forth the strategies that
26 will be implemented at a local level. The management plan should be the last major
27 component of the subbasin plan to be developed because the goals and objectives that
28 are included within it will need to reflect what is learned in the assessment and
29 inventory work. It is in the management plan that policy, legal, and ecological
30 considerations are merged. The management plan should have a 10–15 year horizon.
31 Management plans adopted into the Council’s program must be consistent with the
32 Northwest Power Act and specifically section 4(h)(6) of the act. Necessary elements
33 of the management plan include:

- 34
- 35 ● A vision for the subbasin
- 36
- 37 ● Biological objectives for fish and wildlife that:
38
39 — are consistent with province and basin level visions, objectives, and
40 strategies adopted in the program
41
42 — are responsive to the subbasin assessment findings
43
44 — are consistent with legal rights and obligations of fish and wildlife
45 agencies and tribes with jurisdiction over fish and wildlife in the subbasin, and agreed
46 upon by co-managers in the subbasin. Where there are disagreements among co-

1 managers that translate into differing biological objectives, the differences and the
2 alternative biological objectives should be fully presented
3

4 _____ complement the programs of tribal, state and federal land or water quality
5 management agencies in the subbasin
6

7 _____ integrate Endangered Species Act and Clean Water Act requirements as
8 fully as possible
9

10 _____ have measurable outcomes
11

12 ● _____ Strategies that will be employed over the term of the plan to meet the established
13 vision and biological objectives, including:
14

15 _____ an explanation linking the strategies to the established subbasin biological
16 objectives and vision and the subbasin assessment
17

18 _____ an explanation of how and why the strategies presented were selected over
19 other alternative strategies (e.g. passive restoration strategies v. intervention
20 strategies)
21

22 _____ a proposed sequence and prioritization
23

24 _____ additional steps required to compile a more complete or detailed
25 assessment
26

27 ● _____ A projected budget for the term of the subbasin plan, including:
28

29 _____ a detailed three-year implementation budget
30

31 _____ a more general long-term (10-15 year) budget
32

33 ● _____ A monitoring and evaluation plan that will show whether the actions taken to
34 implement the subbasin plan are achieving their objectives
35

36 ● _____ Any additional steps that are necessary to achieve compliance with Endangered
37 Species Act and Clean Water Act requirements applicable to that subbasin
38
39

40 **6. Developing Implementing Plans at the Subbasin Level**

41

42 Starting in 2001, the Council intends to begin accepting subbasin level plans for
43 adoption into the program. The Council knows that this schedule is very
44 aggressive. However, there is little support in the region for either several more
45 years of discussion and planning or for starting actions that are not grounded in
46 science-based, subbasin level plans. The Council believes that the first attempt to

1 ~~develop comprehensive subbasin plans must be completed as soon as possible,~~
2 ~~and that improvements can be made as new information and experience dictates.~~

3
4 ~~The Council sees subbasin plans as flexible documents that will be revised and~~
5 ~~updated approximately every three years. For those who are unable to participate in~~
6 ~~this timeframe, and for those topics that can not be addressed as fully as may be ideal,~~
7 ~~there will be other opportunities in the near future.~~

8
9 ~~The Council believes that subbasin plans must be developed within an open public~~
10 ~~process that provides ample opportunity for participation by a wide range of state,~~
11 ~~federal, tribal, and local managers, experts, landowners, local governments, and~~
12 ~~stakeholders. The details of that process will vary from subbasin to subbasin, but~~
13 ~~there are essentially two stages.~~

14
15 ~~First, at the local level, interested parties need to work together to develop a plan that,~~
16 ~~as far as possible, embodies the knowledge, policies, and support of the people in that~~
17 ~~subbasin. Recognizing that this effort will need to be undertaken somewhat~~
18 ~~differently in each subbasin, the Council will work with state, tribal, federal, and local~~
19 ~~parties to determine which approach is most likely to succeed in a particular subbasin,~~
20 ~~and then help support that approach. The Council believes that other entities are better~~
21 ~~equipped to take the lead in the local effort, and does not intend to become a lead~~
22 ~~entity at the local level in the subbasin planning process.~~

23
24 ~~Second, when a subbasin plan is proposed for adoption into the program, the Power~~
25 ~~Act's program amendment standards require a public process with full opportunity~~
26 ~~for public comment and participation. The Act also requires that, at the end of the~~
27 ~~process, the Council make a decision based on statutory standards.~~

28
29 ~~It is important to recognize that, while the Council can encourage interested parties to~~
30 ~~work together on a common plan for each subbasin, it cannot preclude any person~~
31 ~~from submitting a plan. Under the Power Act, the Council is obliged to consider and~~
32 ~~make a decision on each recommendation it receives.~~

33
34 ~~After the basin and province levels are fixed in the current program amendment cycle,~~
35 ~~the Council will:~~

- 36
37 ~~● Make subbasin assessments available on its website and through other means to~~
38 ~~the planners, decision makers, and the public as soon as they are completed~~
39
40 ~~● Issue a formal notice and request for recommendations to amend the program.~~
41 ~~This notice will be limited, and explain that only recommendations at the subbasin~~
42 ~~level of the program will be considered~~
43
44 ~~● Take extra steps to target this subbasin notice at local governments, stakeholders,~~
45 ~~planners, watershed groups and land and water managers in each subbasin~~
46

- 1 ● Organize recommendations it receives subbasin by subbasin, for the statutory
2 recommendation comment period. This is intended to facilitate coordination and
3 discussion by those that have made recommendations in any particular subbasin
4
- 5 ● Assist in facilitating the discussions in the subbasins aimed at reconciling the
6 recommendations and ensuring that the program standards for plans are met
7
- 8 ● Produce drafts of the subbasin plans that are crafted from the recommendations
9 and the facilitated discussions for public comment
10
- 11 ● Adopt into the program subbasin plans that meet the established standards. Where
12 more time is needed, the Council may adopt placeholders for a subbasin, and
13 establish a longer timeframe for adoption to facilitate continued discussions
14

15 The Act directs the Council to give special consideration to the recommendations
16 of tribal, state and federal fish and wildlife management entities when considering
17 matters related to fish and wildlife. Therefore, subbasin plans should be
18 developed with the participation of fish and wildlife managers with jurisdiction in
19 the subbasin.

20
21 As outlined above, the Council will require that subbasin plans demonstrate their
22 relationship to Endangered Species Act and Clean Water Act requirements. This should
23 best be achieved by the participation of the applicable regulatory entities in the subbasin
24 level amendment. Because the Council cannot compel this participation, the Council
25 hopes these entities will participate voluntarily, and the Council expects that state and
26 federal agencies and tribes will encourage and facilitate their involvement.
27

28 Local, state, tribal and federal land and water management entities have programs,
29 authority, and jurisdiction beyond that of the fish and wildlife managers. The Council
30 will not require the participation of these entities, but will evaluate the level of
31 involvement provided to them in the planning process, and the level of agreement that
32 they have with the completed plan, when it considers adopting a plan into the program
33 and/or in making its funding recommendations to Bonneville.
34

35 Finally, it is anticipated that the Council and its staff will assist in a facilitation role as
36 plans are developed, and will also seek to ensure that planners address all criteria that
37 ultimately are developed.
38

39 40 **7. Scientific Review of Subbasin Plans**

41
42 The Council will utilize the expertise of independent scientists and boards to review
43 subbasin plans. Examples of questions that may be asked of the reviewers are:
44

- 45 ● Do the assessments contain the elements required by the criteria?
46

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14

- ~~Are the goals, objectives, and strategies scientifically appropriate in light of the assessment and inventory?~~
- ~~Are the goals, objectives, and strategies consistent with those established at the province and basin levels?~~
- ~~Do the plans demonstrate that alternative management responses have been adequately considered?~~
- ~~Are subbasin plans within each province collectively consistent with the province goals, objectives, and strategies?~~

~~In addition, the Council believes that independent review of the subbasin plans will be an important part of ensuring they are appropriate and useful.~~

1 **VIII. Implementation Provisions**

2
3 ~~This section contains the administrative provisions for the program.~~

4
5 **~~A. Project Implementation, Project Selection and Management~~**

6
7 ~~Because~~†This program involves hundreds of projects and many millions of dollars per
8 year in funding, ~~an orderly~~. A process is ~~needed~~necessary to ~~decide which~~review,
9 **prioritize and select** projects ~~should~~to be funded and to administer **and track** these
10 ~~decisions once they are made. This section describes that process.~~**projects over time. To**
11 **the extent practicable, projects and actions should be coordinated throughout the**
12 **region.**

13
14 The procedures for implementing this program should ensure that planning results in on-
15 the-ground actions; and that those actions ~~feed information about their results back to the~~
16 **region**~~be reported~~ to guide future decisions. The Council will use the procedures in this
17 section to integrate Bonneville funding for this program with Endangered Species Act
18 requirements and the collaborating programs of the states, tribes and federal and local
19 governments. This section ~~also~~incorporates ~~the strides~~**advances** made in recent years to
20 ~~define improved~~**improve project** selection and management practices for fiscal
21 accountability and improved ~~reporting information about regional fish and wildlife~~
22 **efforts.**

23
24 ~~This section is intended to outline the essentials of the project selection process. A more~~
25 ~~detailed description is included in the Technical Appendix.~~

26
27
28 **A. Implementing Measures Recommended for 2008-2018**

29
30 **In 2007-08, Bonneville and other agencies of the federal government committed in a**
31 **number of decisions, documents and agreements to fund an extensive set of actions**
32 **over the next ten years to benefit listed and unlisted anadromous and resident fish**
33 **across the Columbia River Basin. These include mainstem, estuary and tributary**
34 **habitat, production, harvest, and monitoring actions committed to by the agencies**
35 **as part of the consultation resulting in the 2008 Biological Opinion for the Federal**
36 **Columbia River Power System and in the Columbia Basin Fish Accords**
37 **(“Accords”) executed with certain Indian tribes and states.**

38
39 **These actions are largely built on the mainstem and off-site mitigation foundations**
40 **developed in the Council’s program over the past 27 years, from the water**
41 **management and passage measures in the original 1982 Program to the most recent**
42 **adoption of subbasin plans. The Council recognizes these as measures that**
43 **Bonneville and the other federal agencies have committed to fund and implement**
44 **under Sections 4(h)(10)(A) and 4(h)(11) of the Northwest Power Act, even as these**

1 | **measures also address needs under other federal laws as well, such as the**
2 | **Endangered Species Act.**¹⁹
3 |

4 | **The Council’s program is broader in scope and covers a greater geographic area**
5 | **and a more extensive set of affected fish and wildlife populations than will benefit**
6 | **from the actions in the 2008 Biological Opinions and the Accords. The Council also**
7 | **received recommendations containing extensive lists of measures for**
8 | **implementation in the next 5-10 years relating to these other areas of the program.**
9 | **These recommendations include habitat and production measures to benefit**
10 | **resident and anadromous fish in the subbasins of the Intermountain, Mountain**
11 | **Columbia and Middle and Upper Snake provinces and the Clearwater subbasin in**
12 | **the Mountain Snake, as well as measures to implement the wildlife elements of the**
13 | **Program. Again, these recommended measures appear to be based on the**
14 | **foundations already developed in the Council’s program, including the adopted**
15 | **subbasin plans. The Council will work with recommending entities, Bonneville and**
16 | **others to shape the measures recommended for these other areas of the program**
17 | **into multi-year implementation plans similar to the implementation plans**
18 | **represented in the 2008 Biological Opinion and the Accords.**
19 |

20 | **The Council accepts these recommendations as measures that are part of the fish**
21 | **and wildlife program. Implementation of all measures whatever their original**
22 | **source, must occur under the following conditions:**
23 |

- 24 | • **All measures must be developed into detailed project proposals subject to review**
25 | **under Section 4(h)(10)(D) of the Northwest Power Act. First, all projects receive**
26 | **an independent science review of proposed work and, if on-going, of past**
27 | **performance. Second, the proposed projects and the science review report are**
28 | **subject to public review. Third, the Council develops funding recommendations**
29 | **for Bonneville based on the proposed projects, the program, the science review**
30 | **and the public review. The Council will review the project proposals carefully to**
31 | **ensure consistency with the Program’s basinwide, mainstem, estuary and**
32 | **subbasin plans and provisions.**
33 |
- 34 | • **Those responsible for implementing these projects must regularly report the**
35 | **results of implementation. Reporting must be sufficient for the purpose of**
36 | **evaluating the success of the projects, facilitating the science/performance**
37 | **review, and contributing appropriately to the program’s broader monitoring**
38 | **and evaluation framework and reporting of program results. Reporting**
39 | **requirements must be included in the Bonneville contracts, and must include**
40 | **reporting in terms of performance metrics required by the Council.**

¹⁹ Note on terminology: The Biological Opinion and the Accords refer to “actions.” Other recommendations to the Council use a variety of terms to refer to the same type of thing, including “actions,” “measures,” “projects,” and so forth. The term used in the Northwest Power Act, and thus used here in the program, is “measures.” “Actions” recommended to the Council for inclusion in the Program are included as program “measures.” Under the terminology of the Act, program “measures” are then implemented by “projects,” subject to project review and proposed for funding and implementation by Bonneville.

- **Implementation of these measures must allow for an on-going adaptive management approach and for future program amendment processes in which measures are modified or discontinued if not performing or no longer identified as a priority.**
- **Funding commitments already made by Bonneville and the other federal agencies to certain measures must not come at the expense of sufficient funding for other program priorities. For the program areas that do not yet carry Bonneville funding commitments, the Council will work with Bonneville and the project sponsors to estimate multi-year implementation budgets and secure funding commitments that assure adequate funding for these implementation plans.**

The Fish and Wildlife Program is composed of measures for the purpose of protecting, mitigating, and enhancing fish and wildlife, including related spawning grounds and habitat, on the Columbia River and its tributaries. Bonneville has an obligation to use its fund in a manner consistent with the measures in the Program. However, the Program is not a vehicle to guarantee funding for a particular project, entity, or individual. The fact that a specific measure is mentioned in the program or referenced by the program, as for example, in the Biological Opinions or Accords, does not by itself constitute a funding obligation for the associated project without further definition for implementation and review under Section 4(h)(10)(D) of the Northwest Power Act. Funding priorities have been determined systematically by the Council in the program, but final funding recommendations for projects in any particular year still depend on the outcome of independent science review, a program consistency review, public comment and a Council recommendation to Bonneville. This process will convert the priority measures in the program into implementation plans that provide specific guidance for Bonneville to ensure that its actions are consistent with the program.

1. Deadlines for Reports

~~A number of the strategies in this program call for certain reports to be prepared on an annual or biennial basis. The Council will consult with the parties involved in preparation of these reports to establish the most appropriate time of the year for completion of each report. Following approval by the Council, these deadlines will be recorded in the Technical Appendix. Deadlines established for these reports are subject to change by mutual agreement between the Council and the reporting parties. Unless otherwise indicated, all reports are due beginning in calendar year 2002.~~

B. Project Review Process

The Northwest Power Act directs the Council to oversee, with the assistance of the ISRP, a process to review projects proposed for funding by Bonneville. The ISRP

1 will review proposed projects and make recommendations to the Council as to
2 whether these proposals are based on sound scientific principles, benefit fish and
3 wildlife, have a clearly defined objective and outcome with provisions for
4 monitoring and evaluation of results, and are consistent with the priorities in the
5 program. The ISRP also reviews the results of prior year expenditures. The Council
6 must allow for public review and comment on the ISRP's recommendations. The
7 Council will then make final recommendations to Bonneville on projects to be
8 funded. In doing so, the Council must fully consider the ISRP's recommendations,
9 explain in writing its reasons for not accepting ISRP recommendations, consider the
10 impact of ocean conditions on fish and wildlife populations, and determine whether
11 the projects employ cost-effective measures to achieve program objectives.

12 1. Objectives of Project Review

- 13
- 14 • Implement Bonneville's portion of the Council's Fish and Wildlife
15 Program for anadromous fish, resident fish, and wildlife, including
16 subbasin plans and other planning documents associated with the
17 program.
- 18
- 19 • Allow the flexibility to incorporate Bonneville's ESA requirements and
20 relevant agreements.
- 21
- 22 • Ensure review of projects (including those identified in the Biological
23 Opinions and Accords) is consistent with the Northwest Power Act,
24 section 4(h)(10)(D).
- 25
- 26 • Recognize differences in project types, specifically those with long-term
27 funding commitments as compared to shorter term implementation (e.g.,
28 habitat). Each type may be set on different, but integrated, funding and
29 review paths.
- 30
- 31 • Establish and communicate timelines, processes, and expectations.
- 32
- 33 • Focus on program performance by linking program spending with
34 limiting factors.
- 35
- 36 • Increase transparency and accountability of project deliverables,
37 durations, reporting requirements, performance metrics, and
38 expectations.

39 2. Step Review Process

40 As one element of project review, the Council developed a Step Review
41 process for review of major capital investments, including new artificial
42 production programs. Step Review allows for review of scientific soundness,

1 possible fish or wildlife benefits, environmental impacts, and design and
2 fiscal considerations at appropriate stages in project development.

3 Step Review includes a thorough review by the ISRP and the Council at
4 three different phases: master or conceptual planning, preliminary design,
5 and final design. Projects do not move from one development step to the
6 next without a favorable review. The Council intends the Step Review
7 process be flexible and cost-efficient. Depending on the nature and status of
8 the proposed project, the Council may allow for a review that combines two
9 or more of the steps in a single submission and review, or for a submission
10 and review that addresses just part of a step in the review process. The Step
11 Review process is further described on the Council's website.

12 ~~2. Project Selection—Basic Requirements and Roles~~

13
14 ~~While the Council has always been involved in efforts to ensure that the program it~~
15 ~~adopts is being implemented effectively, Congress gave the Council an increased and~~
16 ~~explicit role in program implementation in a 1996 amendment to the Power Act. The Act~~
17 ~~now charges the Council, with the assistance of the Independent Scientific Review Panel,~~
18 ~~to make annual recommendations to Bonneville on projects to be funded through the~~
19 ~~Bonneville fish and wildlife budget to implement the program.~~

20
21 ~~The Power Act specifies certain standards and minimum procedures for the project~~
22 ~~review process, but otherwise affords the Council broad discretion to define the~~
23 ~~procedures for conducting project review and selection. The processes outlined below~~
24 ~~describe the statutory requirements and the particular approach that the Council intends to~~
25 ~~use for the foreseeable future to address these requirements and implement the program.~~
26 ~~The Council will continue to refine and modify program implementation measures it~~
27 ~~finds necessary to best accomplish the fish and wildlife purposes of the Act.~~

28
29 ~~In 1998, the U.S. Congress' Senate House conference report on the Fiscal Year 1999~~
30 ~~Energy and Water Development Appropriations bill directed the Council, again with the~~
31 ~~assistance of the Independent Scientific Review Panel, to also review on an annual basis~~
32 ~~the fish and wildlife projects, programs, or measures included in federal agency budgets~~
33 ~~that are reimbursed by Bonneville (the "reimbursable programs"). The four major~~
34 ~~components of the reimbursable program include the Columbia River Fisheries~~
35 ~~Mitigation Program (Corps of Engineers); Fish and Wildlife Operations and Maintenance~~
36 ~~Budget (Corps of Engineers); Lower Snake River Compensation Plan (U.S. Fish and~~
37 ~~Wildlife Service); and the Leavenworth Hatchery (Bureau of Reclamation). It is the~~
38 ~~Council's intent to integrate to the maximum extent possible the review of these~~
39 ~~reimbursable programs with the review of the projects funded by Bonneville to~~
40 ~~implement the Council's program.~~

41 ~~Role of the Independent Scientific Review Panel~~

42
43 ~~The 1996 amendment to the Power Act directed the Council to form the Independent~~
44 ~~Scientific Review Panel and Scientific Peer Review Groups to review projects~~

1 proposed for funding to implement the Council's program through the Bonneville
2 Power Administration's annual fish and wildlife budget. The Act requires the
3 Independent Scientific Review Panel to determine whether projects proposed for
4 funding:

- 5
- 6 •Are based on sound science principles
- 7
- 8 •Benefit fish and wildlife
- 9
- 10 •Have clearly defined objectives and outcomes
- 11
- 12 •Have provisions for monitoring and evaluation of results
- 13
- 14 •Are consistent with the program
- 15

16 The Independent Scientific Review Panel then provides the Council its
17 recommendations regarding project quality and priorities. The 1998 conference report
18 directed the Independent Scientific Review Panel to also review the reimbursable
19 projects using the same standards and provide recommendations to the Council.
20

21 **Role of the Council**

22 The Council's primary role in the project review process is to decide which projects
23 to recommend to Bonneville for funding to implement the program. The Council is
24 also to provide recommendations to Congress and to the federal agencies on funding
25 for the reimbursable programs.
26

27 Several considerations must go into those recommendations. The Council must allow
28 for public review and comment on the projects proposed for funding and the
29 Independent Scientific Review Panel's recommendations. The Council must fully
30 consider and respond to the recommendations of the Independent Scientific Review
31 Panel; the Council must review and determine for itself whether proposed projects are
32 consistent with the Act and the program, including adopted subbasin plans. The
33 Council must determine if proposed projects have met programmatic or project-
34 specific conditions. By statute, the Council must take into consideration the effects of
35 ocean conditions on fish and wildlife populations and must determine that projects
36 employ cost effective means to meet program objectives.
37

38 **Role of the Fish and Wildlife Managers**

39 Currently, the fish and wildlife managers, through the Columbia Basin Fish and
40 Wildlife Authority, develop a draft annual program implementation work plan from
41 the projects proposed for funding. This draft annual work plan is the culmination of a
42 technical and management review of all proposed projects, and it establishes a
43 proposed annual budget and project priorities. The Independent Scientific Review
44 Panel and the Council review the projects proposed for funding in the context of the
45 managers' draft work plan. The Council anticipates that the fish and wildlife

1 managers will continue to organize themselves and jointly provide these
2 recommendations in the work plan to the Council.

3
4 The project reviews and advice of the fish and wildlife managers are valuable to the
5 Council as it deliberates on its funding recommendations. With the program's focus
6 on subbasin level plans as the guiding documents for program implementation, it will
7 be critical that the fish and wildlife managers involve others in the subbasins—
8 stakeholders, land owners and managers, other state and federal agencies, and other
9 interested parties—in a meaningful manner in the development of draft work plans
10 to be able to continue using these work plan recommendations as the foundation for
11 the Council's project recommendations.

12 13 14 **3. Project Selection—Province-based Project Review Process**

15
16 The Council is shifting the annual project solicitation, review and selection of projects
17 from a basin-wide exercise to one that focuses on needs identified at a province and
18 subbasin scale. This shift was made to better align the project selection process with this
19 program's structure that focuses planning and implementation most directly at those
20 levels. Further, in focusing the review on a limited number of provinces and subbasins
21 each year, a more in-depth review of proposed projects can be accomplished. This in-
22 depth review, conducted within a more structured subbasin and province context, will
23 enable the Council to recommend multi-year funding for projects.

24
25 Elements of province reviews include:

- 26
27 •The Council provides for a province meeting to explain the review process to those
28 interested in how Bonneville funding may be used within that province. Lead
29 groups are selected for each subbasin to develop subbasin summaries or, where
30 completed and adopted by the Council, review subbasin plans to identify fish and
31 wildlife project needs that may be proposed for Bonneville funding for the next
32 three years
- 33
34 •Fish and wildlife needs (from a summary or plan) are made widely available, and
35 Bonneville solicits for project proposals to meet the identified needs
- 36
37 •Sponsors of ongoing projects submit project renewal proposals that include plans for
38 the next three years, descriptions of results to date, and briefings on background
39 documents. Ongoing projects will also submit all relevant planning, research, and
40 background documents. Sponsors of new projects submit proposals. All projects
41 must be tied to the approved subbasin plan. Reimbursable programs that are
42 within that province provide similar information
- 43
44 •Bonneville should review proposed projects and budgets to ensure that regulatory
45 needs, including compliance with applicable federal laws, are considered, that
46 questions about the adequacy or appropriateness of proposed budgets are resolved

1 in the Council's recommendation process, and that any concerns Bonneville has
2 about the performance of ongoing projects are identified

- 3
- 4 •The Independent Scientific Review Panel reviews proposals and supporting
5 documents in the context of subbasin plans and the fish and wildlife program
6
- 7 •The Independent Scientific Review Panel conducts subbasin/province visits with
8 project sponsors, managers and others. The visit includes an opportunity for
9 project sponsors to present their proposals and for a subsequent question and
10 answer session with the Independent Scientific Review Panel. In addition, the
11 Independent Scientific Review Panel may conduct project-specific visits
12
- 13 •After the visit, the Independent Scientific Review Panel produces a draft report on
14 proposals recommended for funding, including specific questions, and provides it
15 to project sponsors for comments and revisions
16
- 17 •The project sponsors respond to the draft report
18
- 19 •The Independent Scientific Review Panel addresses the responses and issues a final
20 report and recommendations to the Council. The Council considers the
21 Independent Scientific Review Panel report, other statutory and programmatic
22 considerations, and makes final funding recommendations on program
23 implementation to Bonneville. The Council also makes recommendations on the
24 funding of projects within the reimbursable programs to Congress and the
25 relevant federal agencies
26
- 27 •Systemwide projects will be reviewed as a separate unit within the review schedule.
28 Wherever possible, projects within the mainstem will be reviewed as part of the
29 review of the province in which they are located, although certain projects that
30 concern systemwide passage, water management and dissolved gas issues may be
31 reviewed as part of a separate category of integrated mainstem passage activities

32 C. Project Reporting and Management

33
34 The overall guidelines for project reporting are described in the Monitoring,
35 Evaluation, Research and Reporting section above. All projects must have
36 implementation monitoring which must be reported to Bonneville within six months
37 of completion of the project or annually in the case of multi-year projects.
38 Bonneville, in its contracting process, should ensure that each project adheres to the
39 relevant protocols and methods and satisfies the reporting and data management
40 criteria described in this program or as adopted by the Council. In addition, the
41 Council adopts by reference the reporting and project management standards of
42 relevant NOAA Fisheries Biological Opinions for projects intended to meet the goals
43 and objectives of those Biological Opinions.
44

45 D. Project Funding Priorities

1 The Northwest Power Act establishes Bonneville’s obligation to fully mitigate for fish
2 and wildlife impacts from the development and operation of the hydropower system. The
3 Council recognizes its obligation, in turn, to construct a program that guides Bonneville’s
4 mitigation efforts. ~~The Council recognizes that the work~~**Work** necessary to satisfy
5 Bonneville’s mitigation obligation must be ~~staged to accommodate~~**sized appropriately**
6 **during Bonneville’s rate cases to provide equitable treatment to high priority fish**
7 **and wildlife projects regardless of whether or not they are identified in a Biological**
8 **Opinion or in an Accord, while also accommodating** yearly budget limitations.
9

10 The Council ~~also~~ believes that final determination of ~~the~~ yearly direct program budget
11 ~~may properly be reserved for a~~**should occur no** later ~~phase of the program amendment~~
12 ~~process where the project funding needs will be more greatly informed by subbasin~~
13 ~~planning. Funding for provincial budgets to implement subbasin plans will be part of the~~
14 ~~direct program budget along with any subsequent increases~~**than one year before the**
15 **relevant projects are to be funded. Generally these projects’ budgets are difficult to**
16 **forecast more than three years in advance of initiation, so the budget is expected to**
17 **be a rolling three year spending plan that will have a current spending estimate**
18 **replaced by a new three year estimate every year.**

19 **1. Anadromous Fish, Resident Fish and Wildlife**

20
21 The Council adopts the following funding principles to prioritize among the many
22 needs to address fish and wildlife impacts throughout the basin:
23

- 24 • The Bonneville Power Administration will fulfill its ~~Fish and Wildlife Funding~~
25 ~~Principles (September 16, 1998) including the~~ commitment to “meet all of its fish
26 and wildlife obligations¹²².”
27
- 28 • ~~The determination of provincial budget~~ **Funding** levels should take into account
29 the level of impact caused by the federally operated hydropower system. Other
30 factors will also influence this determination including opportunities for off-site
31 mitigation-
32
- 33 • Wildlife mitigation should emphasize addressing areas of the basin with the
34 highest proportion of unmitigated losses-
35
- 36 • **The Council will continue to evaluate the distribution of funding to provide**
37 **fair and adequate treatment across the program. To prioritize among the**
38 ~~many needs to address fish and wildlife impacts throughout the basin, the~~**The**
39 **Council will** maintains the current funding allocation for anadromous fish (70
40 percent), resident fish (15 percent), and wildlife (15 percent), until a new budget
41 allocation is adopted.

42 **2. Land and Water Acquisition Funds**

43

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41

Experience implementing this program has shown great advantages in being able to move quickly and flexibly to acquire interests in land and water rights for the purpose of protecting or enhancing fish and wildlife habitat. Often the opportunity for an important acquisition exists only for a short period of time, and often there is a substantial price advantage in being able to quickly close the transaction. The time and uncertainty of the current project selection process, and the procedural constraints on real estate acquisition by the federal agencies have made these transactions relatively difficult and more costly than necessary.

a. Water transaction program

Bonneville established a water transactions program in response to the 2000 Columbia River Basin Fish and Wildlife Program and the 2000 FCRPS Biological Opinion. Bonneville shall fund the continuation of the water transaction program to pursue water right acquisitions in subbasins where water quantity has been identified in a subbasin plan as a primary limiting factor. The water transaction program will continue to use both temporary and permanent transactions for instream flow restoration. The water transaction program will coordinate with the fish and wildlife agencies, tribes and project sponsors to:

- **Integrate instream water transactions with efforts to set and meet flow targets and habitat restoration goals;**
- **Integrate instream water transactions with efforts to address other ecological factors that are limiting fish habitat;**
- **Coordinate with Bonneville on other funding efforts addressing flow restoration to ensure consistency; and**
- **To the extent possible, consider the potential impact of climate change while making water transaction recommendations.**

Bonneville funding of the water transaction program shall continue to accommodate associated transaction costs. In recognition of the timeframes necessary to successfully complete water transactions, Bonneville funding of the water transaction program within a given year shall be carried forward into the next year where a water right transaction has been proposed to the water transaction program but could not be completed in the same fiscal year. The water transaction program will seek closer integration of land and water protection acquisition activities.

b. Land acquisition fund

Bonneville shall fund a basinwide land acquisition program, which will include but not be limited to riparian easements and fee-simple acquisitions of land that protect watershed functions. The program will target land transactions that:

- **Protect high quality fish and wildlife habitats that support critical life history stages of strong populations or species of special concern;**
- **Enhance natural ecosystem function and species diversity over the long term;**
- **When possible, integrate water transactions that provide clear and permanent protection of instream flows;**
- **Have willing and capable landowners; and**
- **Are directly supported by subbasin plans.**

The Council will:

- 4. Develop** specific procedures and criteria for identification, review, and decision on whether to recommend proposals for land acquisitions. The criteria will be reviewed by the Independent Scientific Review Panel, but specific acquisitions would not require ISRP review.
- 5. Develop Accountability** provisions for reporting on monies spent, properties acquired, biological benefits, and consistency with program and subbasin objectives.
 - Make all final recommendations regarding land and water acquisitions from the fund.

8. Funding Agreement for Land and Water Acquisitions

~~The Council recommends that Bonneville establish a funding agreement for land and water acquisitions. The Council will establish a mechanism, including an advisory entity, that can act flexibly, quickly, and responsibly in approving funding for land and water acquisition proposals.~~

~~The primary elements are:~~

- ~~• A dedicated budget within Bonneville’s fish and wildlife funding establishing the amount of funding for land and water acquisitions available per year, for a multi-year period. The budget would be known as the “Land and Water Acquisition Fund”~~
- ~~• An advisory board appointed by the Council after consultations with representatives from Bonneville, federal and state fish and wildlife and land management agencies, Columbia Basin Indian tribes, non-profit organizations specializing in habitat and water acquisitions, and the Council. The board would recommend for Council approval all land and water acquisitions from the dedicated budget. The Council will make all final recommendations and decisions regarding land and water acquisitions from the fund~~
- ~~• Specific procedures and criteria for the board to use in identifying, reviewing, and deciding whether to recommend proposals for land and water acquisitions. These~~

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44

~~criteria will be reviewed by the Independent Scientific Review Panel, but specific land and water acquisitions would not require Independent Scientific Review Panel review. An element of these criteria will be a preference for proposed actions that 1) address imminent risks to the survival of one or more species listed under the Endangered Species Act and 2) are broadly recognized as achieving direct fish and wildlife benefits. The criteria should emphasize consistency with the program's biological objectives and subbasin plans~~

- ~~•Standardized terms for implementing acquisitions, including matters of contracting, management, crediting, operation and maintenance costs, and monitoring and evaluation requirements~~
- ~~•Accountability provisions for reporting on monies spent, properties acquired, biological gain, and consistency with program and subbasin objectives. The program as a whole will receive periodic Independent Scientific Review Panel review~~

The Council will work with Bonneville and other interested parties to establish the details of the acquisition fund ~~and have it ready by January 1, 2001 by July 1, 2009.~~

All acquisitions must be on a willing buyer, willing seller basis, consistent with state water law, and consistent with the other provisions of this program. Council members will be notified of all acquisition proposals under consideration by Bonneville. The fund will not be used for a proposed acquisition if both Council members from that state object to the acquisition.

The fund will not take title to acquisitions except on an interim basis, but will, for each transaction, identify an appropriate entity to hold the interest acquired. The fund will work ~~in cooperation~~ with other efforts that are already underway to benefit fish and wildlife through acquisitions of land and may provide cost sharing or full funding for transactions that have been arranged by others. In appropriate circumstances, the fund may provide for the continuing payment of local taxes and fees on an acquisition.

Bonneville should adhere to the open and public process language found in the Northwest Power Act and should address concerns over additions to public land ownership and impacts on local communities, such as a reduction or loss of local government tax base or the local economic base, or consistency with local governments' comprehensive plans.

~~The Council recommends that Bonneville establish a funding agreement for land and water acquisitions. The Council will establish a mechanism,~~

1 including an advisory entity, that can act flexibly, quickly, and responsibly in
2 approving funding for land and water acquisition proposals.

3 The primary elements are:

4
5 •A dedicated budget within Bonneville’s fish and wildlife funding
6 establishing the amount of funding for land and water acquisitions available
7 per year, for a multi-year period. The budget would be known as the “Land
8 and Water Acquisition Fund”

9
10 •An advisory board appointed by the Council after consultations with
11 representatives from Bonneville, federal and state fish and wildlife and land
12 management agencies, Columbia Basin Indian tribes, non-profit
13 organizations specializing in habitat and water acquisitions, and the Council.
14 The board would recommend for Council approval all land and water
15 acquisitions from the dedicated budget. The Council will make all final
16 recommendations and decisions regarding land and water acquisitions from
17 the fund

18
19 •Specific procedures and criteria for the board to use in identifying,
20 reviewing, and deciding whether to recommend proposals for land and water
21 acquisitions. These criteria will be reviewed by the Independent Scientific
22 Review Panel, but specific land and water acquisitions would not require
23 Independent Scientific Review Panel review. An element of these criteria will
24 be a preference for proposed actions that 1) address imminent risks to the
25 survival of one or more species listed under the Endangered Species Act and
26 2) are broadly recognized as achieving direct fish and wildlife benefits. The
27 criteria should emphasize consistency with the program’s biological
28 objectives and subbasin plans

29
30 •Standardized terms for implementing acquisitions, including matters of
31 contracting, management, crediting, operation and maintenance costs, and
32 monitoring and evaluation requirements

33
34 □Accountability provisions for reporting on monies spent, properties
35 acquired, biological gain, and consistency with program and subbasin
36 objectives. The program as a whole will receive periodic Independent
37 Scientific Review Panel review

1 **3. Science and Policy Conference**

2
3 **As described in the Monitoring, Evaluation, Research, and Reporting section**
4 **of this program, the Council will co-sponsor a Columbia River Basin science**
5 **and policy conference approximately every two years. Every other**
6 **conference will include discussion of international issues surrounding**
7 **Columbia River science and policy. The Council will work with the**
8 **Columbia Basin Trust, an agency of the Province of British Columbia, in**
9 **coordinating the international components of the conferences.**

10
11
12 **7E. Program Reporting and Annual Report to Governors and the**
13 **Region Congress**

14
15 Bonneville and the federal operating agencies will work cooperatively with the Council
16 to produce an annual report which will provide an accounting of its fish and wildlife
17 expenditures and hydropower operation costs. **The Council will also continue**
18 **collaboration with all interested parties in the region and will report annually on**
19 **how well projects taken under the program are being adapted to focus on high**
20 **priority limiting factors and focal species in priority areas. The annual report will**
21 **include a discussion of any data gaps, redundancies and recommended changes to**
22 **achieve greater efficiencies.**

23
24 **F. Program Coordination**

25
26 **The Council benefits from the coordinated efforts of many groups, committees and**
27 **organizations in implementing the Council’s program on an ongoing basis.**
28 **Continued coordination of various program elements is expected, supported, and in**
29 **some cases financed by Bonneville. The elements below represent the key areas in**
30 **which the Council seeks continued coordinated efforts from fish and wildlife**
31 **managers and interested parties throughout the region. Coordination funding**
32 **should be focused on the following activities that support program implementation:**

- 33
34
 - 35 • **Data management (storage, management and reporting)**
 - 36 • **Monitoring and Evaluation (framework and approach)**
 - 37 • **Developing and tracking biological objectives**
 - 38 • **Review of technical documents and processes**
 - 39 • **Project proposal review**
 - 40 • **Coordination of projects, programs and funding sources within subbasins**
 - 41 • **Facilitating and participating in focus workgroups on program issues**
 - 42 • **Information dissemination (technical, policy and outreach)**

43 ~~**The Council will work with federal, state and tribal fish and wildlife agencies, other**~~
44 ~~**key federal agencies, the collective regional organizations of agencies and tribes, and**~~
45 ~~**key watershed and recovery board entities to determine and plan how best to**~~

~~coordinate these program activities.~~ Any entity or organization receiving funding for coordination of program activities must develop a work plan detailing the coordination elements, objectives, deliverables and budget. All coordination work will be reviewed as part of the Council’s project review process and as necessary, scientific and administrative review. The Council will **make a final recommendation to Bonneville the level and type of coordination required to implement the program.** ~~on the need of coordination activity.~~

5G. Coordination with Other Regional Programs

The Council will **continue to** pursue opportunities to ~~integrate~~ **implement the** program ~~strategies in coordination~~ with other federal, state, tribal, Canadian, and volunteer fish and wildlife restoration programs. ~~The Council will use the subbasin planning process to identify coordination needs and opportunities. The subbasin planning process should inventory regulatory requirements, including Endangered Species Act and Clean Water Act measures, clarify water and land management objectives affecting fish and wildlife, and fit program funding to other programs for the maximum benefit.~~ **The Council will continue to work with national programs that influence our work in the Basin, such as the Clean Water Act, and the Endangered Species Act.**

The Council will coordinate with organizations that track and monitor data on non-native species distribution, climate change, and human population change at the Northwest regional scale. There are also ongoing efforts to monitor trends in Northwest habitat quality, ocean conditions and fish and wildlife that the Council will continue to track and participate in as described in the Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and Reporting section above. Continued coordination with these larger efforts is important as their products and reports can directly influence our work in the Basin and help to guide decision-making.

~~As the Council refines the province-based project review and funding process, it will focus the information requirements of the process to identify how project sponsors may link their efforts to address program objectives with the objectives or requirements of other programs.~~

~~The Council will use the subbasin planning process to review Endangered Species Act and Clean Water Act requirements in more detail and obtain independent scientific review of both the program measures and the requirements of applicable biological opinions. The Council will present the results of these reviews and any revised recommendations to the National Marine Fisheries Service and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to consider further revision or reconciliation of biological opinion requirements. Pursuant to the requirements of the 1998 Energy and Water Appropriations Act, the Council will also report the results of these reviews to Congress as part of the annual review of reimbursable projects.~~

1 ~~The National Marine Fisheries Service intends to call on the federal action agencies to~~
2 ~~annually develop one- and five-year implementation plans and associated budgets for~~
3 ~~activities they intend to undertake to meet the performance standards and objectives for~~
4 ~~listed species. The Council endorses this approach, and once the requirement is further~~
5 ~~defined, will seek to incorporate these plans into the subbasin review process.~~

6
7 ~~For non-operational measures proposed by biological opinions for Bonneville funding~~
8 ~~(such as research or off-site habitat measures), the Council will call on Bonneville, the~~
9 ~~National Marine Fisheries Service and the Fish and Wildlife Service to first define~~
10 ~~proposed projects consistently with the project proposal form and process for~~
11 ~~Bonneville's direct-funded program. The Council will seek review of these proposals~~
12 ~~with the other projects proposed in the project review process.~~

13

1 | **H. In-lieu**

2 |
3 | **Bonneville will only invoke the *in-lieu* provision under the Northwest Power Act**
4 | **when the expenditure, or potential expenditure, of Bonneville funds would clearly**
5 | **cause another funding source not to fund a project under this program.**
6 |

7 | **I. Independent Scientific Review**

8 |
9 | All projects funded under this program are required by law to undergo review by an
10 | independent science panel. In addition, the program uses a second, related panel of
11 | scientists to provide advice to the region on key scientific issues.
12 |

13 | Independent scientific review is an established tradition in research and development
14 | programs in the United States and much of the world. Independent scientific review can
15 | help decision-makers separate scientific variables from other considerations (political,
16 | economic, cultural, etc.) and help ensure that environmental decision-making reflects the
17 | best scientific knowledge ~~of the day. In the Columbia River Basin, the magnitude of~~
18 | ~~scientific research undertaken and uncertainties that remain are staggering. Independent~~
19 | ~~scientific review can identify strengths and weaknesses of scientific programs and critical~~
20 | ~~information gaps that are most relevant to management and policy decisions.~~
21 |

22 | Independent scientific review for the fish and wildlife program is implemented by two
23 | groups: the Independent Scientific Review Panel (**ISRP**) and the Independent Scientific
24 | Advisory Board (**ISAB**). Each group provides unique services to the program. The
25 | ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** reviews individual projects in the context of
26 | the program and makes recommendations on matters related to those projects. The
27 | ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** provides an on-call scientific body for peer
28 | -review of various reports, **projects plans**, and issues affecting Columbia River Basin fish
29 | and wildlife.
30 |

31 | ~~The Independent Scientific Review Panel was created after the last Council program~~
32 | ~~amendment, and the Independent Scientific Advisory Board's role was expanded from~~
33 | ~~the 1994-1995 Program to meet the National Marine Fisheries Service's needs. This~~
34 | ~~program amendment formalizes, distinguishes, and specifies the roles, responsibilities,~~
35 | ~~and procedures of the two groups while maintaining a strong link between the groups.~~
36 | The background and responsibilities ~~for of~~ each group **are provided below,** and a **A**
37 | description of the ~~shared~~ administrative procedures ~~for both groups~~ follows.

38 | **1. The Independent Scientific Review Panel**

39 | **Review Responsibilities**

40 |
41 |
42 | The 1996 amendment to the **Northwest** Power Act directed the Council to
43 | appoint an 11-member panel of independent scientists and additional peer review
44 | groups. These scientists provide advice and information regarding scientific
45 | aspects of projects that the Council may recommend for funding by Bonneville.

1 | The ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~ISRP and peer review groups have
2 | responsibilities in three areas:
3 |

- 4 | • Review projects proposed for Bonneville funding to implement the Council's
5 | program
6 |

7 | The **Northwest** Power Act directs the ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~ISRP
8 | to review annually projects that are proposed for Bonneville funding to implement
9 | the Council's program. The Act specifies the review standards that the
10 | ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~ISRP is to use and the kinds of
11 | recommendations to make to the Council. The Council must fully consider the
12 | ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel's~~ISRP's report prior to making its funding
13 | recommendations to Bonneville, and must explain in writing wherever the
14 | Council's recommendations differ from the ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
15 | ~~Panel's~~ISRP's.

- 16 |
- 17 | • Retrospective review of program accomplishments
18 |

19 | The 1996 amendment also directs the ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~ISRP,
20 | with assistance from the Scientific Peer Review Groups, to annually review the
21 | results of prior-year expenditures based upon the project review criteria and
22 | submit its findings to the Council. The retrospective review should focus on the
23 | measurable benefits to fish and wildlife made through projects funded by
24 | Bonneville and previously reviewed. The ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
25 | ~~Panel's~~ISRP's findings should provide biological information for the Council's
26 | ongoing accounting and evaluation of Bonneville's expenditures and the level of
27 | success in meeting the objectives of the program, as described in the monitoring
28 | and evaluation section. Also as part of the ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
29 | ~~Panel's~~ISRP's annual retrospective report, the ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
30 | ~~Panel~~ISRP should summarize ~~its province review efforts and identify the~~ major
31 | basinwide programmatic issues ~~gleaned from the province reviews~~**identified**
32 | **during project reviews.**
33 |

- 34 | • Review projects funded through Bonneville's reimbursable program
35 |

36 | In 1998, the U.S. Congress' Senate-House conference report on the Fiscal Year
37 | 1999 Energy and Water Development Appropriations bill directed the
38 | ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~ISRP to review the fish and wildlife
39 | projects, programs, or measures included in federal agency budgets that are
40 | reimbursed by Bonneville, using the same standards and making
41 | recommendations as in its review of the projects proposed to implement the
42 | Council's program. Further details of the ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
43 | ~~Panel's~~ISRP's project review responsibilities are described ~~earlier above~~, in the
44 | section on project selection.
45 |

1 The ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** is a standing group that ~~meets~~
2 **conducts reviews** throughout the year. Recommendations from the ~~Independent~~
3 ~~Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** are reached by consensus. The ~~Independent~~
4 ~~Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** may enlist Peer Review Group members to assist in
5 reviews. From the pool of Peer Review Group members, the ~~Independent~~
6 ~~Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** selects reviewers who have the appropriate
7 expertise for the review at issue. The ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP**
8 develops guidelines and criteria for reviews that ~~include~~**describe** lists of
9 materials ~~reviewed~~**needed**, site-visit protocols, and limits to reviewer and project
10 sponsor communication.

11 **2. The Independent Scientific Advisory Board**

12
13 The Council and ~~the National Marine Fisheries Service~~**NOAA Fisheries**
14 established the ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**11-member ISAB** to
15 provide independent scientific advice to the region ~~through measures described in~~
16 ~~the Council's 1994-1995 Fish and Wildlife Program and the National Marine~~
17 ~~Fisheries Service's 1995 Proposed Recovery Plan for Snake River Salmon. Rather~~
18 ~~than establish two groups, the National Marine Fisheries Service and the Council~~
19 ~~created the Independent Scientific Advisory Board. In creating the Independent~~
20 ~~Scientific Advisory Board, the National Marine Fisheries Service and the Council~~
21 **hoped with the intent** to avoid gridlock over scientific uncertainty, circumvent
22 unnecessary additional research, and resolve conflicting advice and opinions on
23 recovery issues and measures. **In 2002, the Columbia River Indian Tribes**
24 **joined the Council and NOAA Fisheries as partners in the ISAB's**
25 **administrative oversight.**

26 **a. Review p**~~rocedures~~

27 The ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** is a standing group that
28 meets regularly throughout the year. ~~Recommendations from the~~
29 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~ **ISAB recommendations** are
30 reached by consensus. The ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB**
31 may enlist ad hoc members to assist in reviews. Ad hoc members may
32 include ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** and Peer Review
33 Group members. The ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB**
34 conducts reviews in a manner consistent with its terms of reference and
35 procedures policy.

36 **b. ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Bo~~ISAB Administrative Oversight** 37 **Panel**

38 A panel consisting of the chair of the Northwest Power ~~Planning and~~
39 ~~Conservation~~ Council; the ~~regional administrator~~**Regional**
40 ~~Administrator~~ of ~~the National Marine Fisheries Service~~**NOAA Fisheries**;
41 ~~and the Director of the Northwest Fishery Science Center as joint~~
42 ~~participants~~; and a ~~senior~~ representative ~~from~~**of** the Columbia Basin
43 Indian ~~tribes provides~~**Tribes provides a** administrative oversight for the

1 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** and approve~~ss~~ the
2 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**annual** work plan.~~The panel~~
3 ~~makes appointments to the Independent Scientific Advisory Board from a~~
4 ~~list developed by a Scientific Screening Committee. Decisions of the panel~~
5 ~~shall be by majority vote. The Council shall work with the National~~
6 ~~Marine Fisheries Service and the regional Indian tribes to amend the~~
7 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board's terms of reference to provide this~~
8 ~~role for the regional Indian tribes, and to define protocols for the~~
9 ~~Administrative Oversight Panel that ensure the Independent Scientific~~
10 ~~Advisory Board's continued independence.~~ **and budget. The Council will**
11 **request an updated recommendation from the Columbia River Indian**
12 **Tribes for tribal representation. The panel will make appointments to**
13 **the ISAB from a list of nominees developed by the National Academy**
14 **of the Sciences. Final selection of ISAB members is made by majority**
15 **vote of the three members of the Administrative Oversight Panel.**

16 ~~Specific Tasks of the Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~

17 ~~Evaluate the program's scientific principles to ensure they are~~
18 ~~consistent with the best available science~~

19 **c. Specific ISAB functions**

- 20 • Evaluate the fish and wildlife program on its scientific merits in
21 time to inform amendments to the fish and wildlife program and
22 before the Council requests recommendations from the region.
- 23
- 24 • Evaluate ~~National Marine Fisheries Service~~**NOAA Fisheries'**
25 recovery plans for Columbia River Basin stocks and aspects of the
26 recovery process when requested.
 - 27 ○ Review the scientific and technical issues associated with
28 efforts to improve anadromous fish survival through all life
29 stages, based on adaptive management approaches.
 - 30 ○ Review and provide advice on priorities for conservation and
31 recovery efforts, including research, monitoring and evaluation
- 32
- 33 • **Provide scientific advice and review of topics identified as**
34 **critical to fish recovery and conservation in the Columbia**
35 **River Basin.**
- 36
- 37 • **Evaluate the scientific merits of plans and measures proposed**
38 **to ensure satisfaction and continuation of tribal treaty fishing**
39 **rights in the Columbia River Basin and other tribal efforts to**
40 **restore and manage fish and wildlife resources.**
- 41
- 42 • Provide specific scientific advice on topics and questions requested
43 from the region **or the ISAB itself** and approved by the ~~oversight~~

1 | ~~panel. Tribes, fish~~**Oversight Panel by majority vote. Fish** and
2 | wildlife agencies and others may submit questions to the
3 | ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** through the ~~oversight~~
4 | ~~panel.~~**Oversight Panel.** The ~~Independent Scientific Advisory~~
5 | ~~Board~~**ISAB** may also identify questions and propose reviews. ~~The~~
6 | ~~oversight panel and the Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~
7 | **The Oversight Panel, in consultation with the ISAB,** reviews
8 | these questions in a timely manner and decides which are
9 | amenable to scientific analysis, are relevant to the **Tribes’**,
10 | Council’s, and ~~National Marine Fisheries Service’s~~**NOAA**
11 | **Fisheries’** programs, and fit within the ~~Independent Scientific~~
12 | ~~Advisory Board’s~~**ISAB’s** work plan-. **Many questions pertaining**
13 | **to the recovery of the Columbia River ecosystem contain both**
14 | **scientific and policy aspects. The ISAB should confine itself to**
15 | **dealing only with scientific aspects of issues.**

16 | ~~In 2000, The National Marine Fisheries Service established a Recovery~~
17 | ~~Science Review Panel and Technical Review Teams that will provide~~
18 | ~~scientific advice on West Coast salmon recovery efforts. The Independent~~
19 | ~~Scientific Advisory Board effort will be coordinated with The National~~
20 | ~~Marine Fisheries Service’s panel and teams to avoid redundancy.~~**3.**

21 | **Administration of the Independent Scientific Review Panel, the Scientific**
22 | **Peer Review Groups, and the Independent Scientific Advisory Board**

23 | **a. Membership**

24 | The ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** and the ~~Independent~~
25 | ~~Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** shall each be composed of eleven
26 | members. Peer Review Groups shall be composed of a pool of scientists
27 | sufficient in size and expertise to assist the ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
28 | ~~Panel~~**ISRP** in its review responsibilities. To ensure coordination and
29 | avoid redundancy of efforts between the ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
30 | ~~Panel~~**ISRP** and the ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB**, at least
31 | two members of the ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** shall be on
32 | the ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB**. Other ~~Independent~~
33 | ~~Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** members should be considered for
34 | appointment to the Peer Review Group.

35 |
36 | Membership for each group shall include, to the extent feasible, scientists
37 | with expertise in Columbia River anadromous and resident fish ecology,
38 | statistics, wildlife ecology, ~~and~~ ocean and estuary ecology, fish husbandry,
39 | genetics, geomorphology, social and economic sciences, and other
40 | relevant disciplines. ~~There should be a balance between scientists with~~
41 | ~~specific knowledge of the Columbia River Basin and those with more~~
42 | ~~broad and diverse experience.~~ **There should be a balance between**
43 | **scientists with specific knowledge of the institutions, history,**
44 | **geography, and key scientific issues of the Columbia River Basin and**
45 | **those with more broad and diverse experience.** Members should have a

1 strong record of scientific accomplishment, high standards of scientific
2 integrity, the ability to forge creative solutions to complex problems, and a
3 demonstrated ability to work effectively in an interdisciplinary setting.

4
5 ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** and ~~Independent Scientific~~
6 ~~Advisory Board~~**ISAB** membership terms are **normally** for three years, not
7 to exceed two terms. Term limits of the members are staggered to ensure
8 continuity of effort. Peer Review Group members do not have specific
9 terms, but the ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** and the Council
10 will review the pool of Peer Review Group members on an annual basis
11 and update it when appropriate.

12 **b. Appointment ~~Procedures~~procedures**

13 The appointment procedures to fill vacancies on the ~~Independent~~
14 ~~Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** and the ~~Independent Scientific Review~~
15 ~~Panel~~**ISRP**, and to augment the pool of Peer Review Group members,
16 follows three steps. The first two steps are the same for each group. First,
17 the Council, in cooperation with the ~~Independent Scientific Advisory~~
18 ~~Board~~**ISAB** Oversight Panel, invites the region to submit nominations.
19 Second, ~~a three-member committee of~~ the National Academy of Sciences,
20 assisted by the National Research Council, evaluates the credentials of the
21 nominees, submits additional nominees if necessary, and recommends a
22 pool of qualified candidates for potential appointment. This pool of
23 candidates should span the areas of needed expertise and meet the
24 membership criteria for the ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** and
25 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB**. The pool should be robust
26 enough to last through several rounds of appointments. The third step, the
27 appointment procedure, varies for the ~~Independent Scientific Advisory~~
28 ~~Board~~**ISAB** and ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP**. The
29 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** Oversight Panel appoints
30 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB** members. The Council alone
31 appoints ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** and Peer Review
32 Group members.

33 **c. Conflict of ~~Interest~~interest**

34 ~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board, Independent~~
35 ~~Scientific Review Panel~~**ISAB, ISRP** and Scientific Peer
36 Review Group members are subject to the conflict of
37 interest standards that apply to scientists performing
38 comparable work for the National Academy of Sciences.
39 At a minimum, members with direct or indirect financial
40 interest in ~~a-a~~ project shall be recused from review of, or
41 recommendations associated with, such a project. The
42 Council ~~may create~~**has approved** a Conflict of Interest
43 Policy that satisfies the needs of the program, applies to the
44 ~~Independent Scientific Review Panel~~**ISRP** and the

1
2
3
4

~~Independent Scientific Advisory Board~~**ISAB**, and is **at least as rigorous as** based on the National Academy of Science's standards.

1 **IX. Tribal Rights, Water Rights, and the Role of Fish**

2 **— and Wildlife Agencies**

4 **A. Recognition of Tribal Role**

6 The Council recognizes that the Indian tribes in the Columbia River Basin have vital
7 interests directly affected by activities covered in this program. These Indian tribes are
8 sovereigns with governmental rights over their lands and people, and with rights over
9 natural resources ~~that~~^{which} are reserved by or protected in treaties, executive orders, and
10 federal statutes. The United States has a trust obligation toward Indian tribes to preserve
11 and protect these rights and authorities. Nothing in this program is intended to affect or
12 modify any trust or treaty right of an Indian tribe. The Council also recognizes that
13 implementation of this program will require significant interaction and cooperation with
14 the tribes. ~~The Council~~ ^{and} commits to working with the tribes in a relationship that
15 recognizes the tribes' interests in co-management of affected fish and wildlife resources,
16 and respects the sovereignty of tribal governments.

18 **B. Water Rights**

20 As provided by the Northwest Power Act, nothing in this program shall affect the rights
21 or jurisdictions of the United States, the states, Indian tribes, or other entities over waters
22 of any river or stream or over any groundwater resources. **Nor shall anything in this**
23 **program otherwise** be construed to alter or establish the respective rights of ~~States~~, the
24 United States, **the states**, Indian ~~t~~ribes, or any person with respect to any water or
25 water-related right.

27 **C. Role of Fish and Wildlife Agencies**

29 The Northwest Power Act envisions a strong role for fish and wildlife agencies and
30 Indian tribes in developing the provisions of this program. In ~~s~~Sections 4(h)(6)(A) and
31 4(h)(6)(D) of the Act, the Council is directed to include program measures that it
32 determines ~~(A)~~ “complement the existing and future activities of the Federal and the
33 region’s State fish and wildlife agencies and appropriate Indian tribes” and **which ~~(D)~~**
34 **“will “be consistent with the legal rights of appropriate Indian tribes in the region.”**

1 ~~Schedule for Further Rulemakings~~

2 ~~This program describes additional amendment proceedings that are intended by the~~
3 ~~Council for further revisions. In order to assure that these further revisions are~~
4 ~~adopted in an orderly manner, the Council commits to the following schedule:~~

5 ~~A. Mainstem Coordination Plan~~

6 ~~On or before May 1, 2001, the Council will solicit recommendations for a mainstem~~
7 ~~coordination plan, similar to a subbasin plan. The plan will consider ways in which~~
8 ~~the hydrosystem operations called for in the biological opinions could be adjusted so~~
9 ~~as to assure that these operations meet the needs of ESA-listed stocks and the~~
10 ~~dietates of the Northwest Power Act. The hydrosystem measures contained in this~~
11 ~~plan will also provide necessary guidance to the Council's subbasin planning~~
12 ~~process.~~

13 ~~The plan will include, as appropriate, specific measures such as standards for~~
14 ~~systemwide coordination, flow regimes, spill, reservoir elevations, water retention~~
15 ~~times, passage modifications at mainstem dams, operational requirements to protect~~
16 ~~mainstem spawning and rearing areas, and operational requirements to protect~~
17 ~~resident fish and wildlife.~~

18 ~~The Council plans to complete this rulemaking by October 2001.~~

19 ~~B. Objectives for Basin Level Environmental Characteristics~~

20 ~~The Council has requested review by the Independent Scientific Advisory Board of~~
21 ~~the basin level environmental characteristics contained in the to this program by~~
22 ~~June 2001. Following this review, if further changes are merited, the Council will~~
23 ~~request recommendations on or before October 2001 and consider amendments to~~
24 ~~these objectives, with final amendments adopted by July 2002. The date of~~
25 ~~completion may vary depending on the comments received and issues raised.~~

26 ~~C. Province Level Goals, Objectives, and Strategies~~

27 ~~The Council will continue to work with interested parties to develop potential goals,~~
28 ~~objectives, and strategies at the level of ecological provinces. The Council expects~~
29 ~~that the information developed for, and in, the subbasin planning process will also~~
30 ~~inform the province level elements, and help shape the subbasin plans so that they~~
31 ~~are coordinated with the plans of other subbasins in their province.~~

32 ~~At this time, the Council is not scheduling a further rulemaking for province level~~
33 ~~goals, objectives, and strategies. If further information is developed that merits such~~
34 ~~amendments, the Council will solicit recommendations and accept amendments.~~

35 ~~In the course of adopting subbasin plans, the Council will consider how the~~
36 ~~proposed plans fit with one another within and among provinces. The Council~~

1 ~~expects that, at the conclusion of the subbasin planning process, it will conduct a~~
2 ~~specific amendment process to incorporate specific provincial visions, objectives,~~
3 ~~and strategies.~~

4 ~~D. Subbasin Plans~~

5 ~~In January 2001, the Council will issue a call for recommendations for subbasin~~
6 ~~plans. Recommendations will be received on or before May 1, 2001; November 1,~~
7 ~~2001; May 1, 2002; November 1, 2002; May 1, 2003; November 1, 2003; May 1,~~
8 ~~2004; and November 1, 2004. The Council will make a decision on each subbasin~~
9 ~~plan within one year of its receipt, unless otherwise agreed by the recommending~~
10 ~~party.~~

11 ~~In other words, subbasin plans can be submitted on any of these dates during this~~
12 ~~three-year period, and the date of final decision will be one year or less after receipt.~~
13 ~~For example, a plan submitted on November 1, 2002, will be acted upon by~~
14 ~~November 1, 2003.~~

15 ~~The Council is taking this approach to assure that subbasin plans can be submitted~~
16 ~~when ready, and also to assure that the parties working on a plan within a subbasin~~
17 ~~have a reasonable opportunity to come together on a common plan. The Council~~
18 ~~recognizes that the timing for submission of plans will vary depending on a number~~
19 ~~of factors, including the level of information and planning already available in a~~
20 ~~subbasin and the working relationship among the participants.~~

21 ~~Under the Northwest Power Act, there is no requirement of consensus in order for a~~
22 ~~recommendation to be submitted to the Council and it is possible that different~~
23 ~~parties will submit different plans for a given subbasin. However, the level of~~
24 ~~support by the affected parties in a subbasin for a plan can be an important factor~~
25 ~~in gauging how well the plan meets the standards of the Northwest Power Act, and~~
26 ~~whether that plan can be effectively implemented. Thus, the Council strongly~~
27 ~~encourages interested parties to work together as much as possible to present a~~
28 ~~single, well-supported plan for each subbasin.~~

1 **Transition Provisions**

2 **Continuation of Existing Measures**

3 ~~Unless specifically stated otherwise, all measures not directly superseded by this~~
4 ~~program will continue to have force and effect until: 1) a subbasin plan has been~~
5 ~~adopted by the Council for the subbasin in which the project is located (or, for~~
6 ~~research and mainstem measures, a research or mainstem plan); 2) the measure has~~
7 ~~been specifically repealed in a subsequent rulemaking; or 3) three years have~~
8 ~~elapsed following the final approval of this program, whichever occurs first.~~

X. Appendix

The Appendix, which follows in this volume, is legally part of the fish and wildlife program. The provisions of this Appendix have been formally adopted by the Council and ~~changes to this Appendix requires~~**changes to this Appendix require** formal amendment of the fish and wildlife program.

The contents of the Appendix are:

A. Glossary and Acronyms

B. Hydroelectric Development Conditions: This section contains conditions to protect fish and wildlife applicable to FERC-licensed projects and also designates certain areas as Protected Areas, in which the Council recommends there be no new hydroelectric projects developed.

C. Wildlife Provisions: These provisions consist of tables setting forth wildlife mitigation priorities for the Lower Columbia Subbasin, Upper Columbia Subbasin, and Snake River Subbasin and a table identifying the losses due to hydropower construction at federal dams in the Columbia River Basin. The provisions also contain mitigation considerations in dam licensing and relicensing decisions.

~~D. Provisional Statement of Biological Objectives for environmental characteristics at the Basin level.~~

~~DE.~~ Findings on the Recommendations submitted to the Council in ~~2000~~**2008** for Amendments to the Fish and Wildlife Program ~~(the.~~ **The** findings are not contained in this volume. They are posted on the Council's website.

~~FE.~~ Analysis of the Adequacy, Efficiency, Economy and Reliability of the Power System.

F. Estimates of Hydropower-Related Losses.

1 **Appendix A: Glossary and Acronyms**

2
3 **Act** - See Northwest Power Act.

4
5 **Action Agencies** - U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, the Bonneville Power Administration
6 and the U. S. Bureau of Reclamation that own or operate the Federal Columbia River
7 Power System.

8
9 **Adaptive Management** - A scientific policy that seeks to improve management of
10 biological resources, particularly in areas of scientific uncertainty, by viewing fish and
11 wildlife program actions (projects) as vehicles for learning. Projects that implement the
12 program are designed and implemented as experiments so that even if they fail, they
13 provide useful information for future actions. Monitoring and evaluation are emphasized
14 so that the ~~interaction of different elements of the system are~~**interaction of different**
15 **elements of the system is** better understood.

16
17 **Alluvial** - Detrital material, such as clay, sand, and gravel that is deposited along the river
18 or stream channel.

19
20 **Anadromous Fish** - Fish that hatch in freshwater, migrate to the ocean, mature there and
21 return to freshwater to spawn; for example, Chinook salmon, Pacific lamprey, and or
22 steelhead salmon.

23
24 **Other Federal Laws** - A term usually intended to imply the Endangered Species Act and
25 the Clean Water Act.

26
27 **Artificial Production** - See artificial propagation.

28
29 **Artificial Propagation** - Any assistance provided by human technology to animal
30 reproduction. In the context of Pacific salmon, this assistance may include, but is not
31 limited to, spawning and rearing in hatcheries, stock transfers, creation of spawning
32 habitat, egg bank programs, captive broodstock programs and cryopreservation of
33 gametes.

34
35 **B-run Steelhead** - Summer steelhead crossing Bonneville Dam after August 25.

36
37 **Baseline Monitoring** - In the context of subbasin, recovery or other program planning,
38 baseline monitoring is done to establish historical and/or current conditions against which
39 progress (or lack of progress) can be measured. The lack of baseline monitoring should
40 not be a reason to take no actions under this program. Enough baseline information
41 should be gathered as quickly as possible to be reasonably certain the actions proposed
42 are addressing priority limiting factors to benefit focal species in priority reaches.

43
44 **Basinwide** - An activity or an issue that extends over the entire Columbia River
45 watershed.

1 **Biological Diversity** - Biological diversity within and among populations of salmonids is
2 generally considered important for three reasons. First, diversity of life history patterns is
3 associated with a use of a wider array of habitats. Second, diversity protects a species
4 against short-term spatial and temporal changes in the environment. And third, genetic
5 diversity is the so-called raw material for adapting to long-term environmental change.
6 The latter two are often described as nature's way of hedging its bets – a mechanism for
7 dealing with the inevitable fluctuations in environmental conditions – long and short
8 term. With respect to diversity, more is better from an extinction-risk perspective.

9
10 **Biological Indicators** - The general measures of success for the regional effort that in
11 some cases will extend beyond the narrow responsibility of the federal hydropower
12 system. These indicators will focus on fish populations, productivity, fish survival,
13 artificial production, predation, harvest, and wildlife habitat.

14
15 **Biological Objectives** - The initial assessments along with the vision will guide the focus of
16 the biological objectives. Biological objectives should clearly describe physical and
17 biological changes needed to achieve the vision in a quantifiable fashion. They will serve as a
18 benchmark to evaluate progress toward the subbasin vision and should have measurable
19 outcomes. Biological objectives should (1) describe and quantify the degree to which the
20 limiting factors will be improved, and (2) describe and quantify changes in biological
21 performance of populations that will result from actions taken to address the limiting factors.

22
23 **Biological Opinion** - A document that is the product of formal consultation, stating the
24 opinion of the Service on whether or not a Federal action is likely to jeopardize the
25 continued existence of listed species or result in the destruction or adverse modification
26 of critical habitat.

27
28 **Biological Performance** - The responses of populations to habitat conditions, described
29 in terms of capacity, abundance, productivity, and life history diversity.

30
31 **Biological Potential** - The biological potential of a species means the potential capacity,
32 productivity and life history diversity of a population in its habitat at each life stage.

33
34 **Blocked areas** - Areas in the Columbia River Basin where hydroelectric projects have
35 created permanent barriers to anadromous fish runs. These include the areas above Chief
36 Joseph and Grand Coulee dams, the Hells Canyon Complex and other smaller locations.

37
38 **Bonneville Power Administration (Bonneville)** - The sole federal power marketing
39 agency in the Northwest and the region's major wholesaler of electricity. Created by
40 Congress in 1937, Bonneville sells power to public and private utilities, direct service
41 customers, and various public agencies in the states of Washington, Oregon, Idaho,
42 Montana west of the Continental Divide, (and parts of Montana east of the Divide) and
43 smaller adjacent areas of California, Nevada, Utah, and Wyoming. The Northwest Power
44 Act charges Bonneville with additional duties related to energy conservation, generating
45 resource acquisition, and fish and wildlife.

46

1 **Bureau of Reclamation, U.S. Department of the Interior** - An agency that administers
2 some parts of the federal program for water resource development and use in western
3 states. The Bureau of Reclamation owns and operates a number of dams in the Columbia
4 River Basin, including Grand Coulee, Hungry Horse, and several projects on the Yakima
5 River.

6
7 **Bypass system** - A channel or conduit in a dam that provides a route for fish to move
8 through or around the dam without going through the turbine units.

9
10 **Carrying capacity** - The number of individuals of one species that the resources of a
11 habitat can support. That is, the upper limit on the steady-state population size that an
12 environment can support. Carrying capacity is a function of both the populations and
13 their environments.

14
15 **Clean Water Act** - The Act employs a variety of regulatory and nonregulatory tools to
16 regulate direct pollutant discharges into waterways, finance municipal wastewater
17 treatment facilities, and manage polluted runoff. The goal is to restore and maintain the
18 chemical, physical, and biological integrity of the nation's waters so that they can support
19 "the protection and propagation of fish, shellfish, and wildlife and recreation in and on
20 the water."

21
22 **Climate change (also referred to as "global climate change")** - The term "climate
23 change" is sometimes used to refer to all forms of climatic inconsistency, but because the
24 Earth's climate is never static, the term is more properly used to imply a significant
25 change from one climatic condition to another. In some cases, climate change' has been
26 used synonymously with the term, "global warming;" scientists, however, tend to use the
27 term in the wider sense to also include natural changes in climate.

28
29 **Climate** - The average weather (usually taken over a 30-year time period) for a particular
30 region and time period. Climate is not the same as weather, but rather it is the average
31 pattern of weather for a particular region. Weather describes the short-term state of the
32 atmosphere. Climatic elements include precipitation, temperature, humidity, sunshine,
33 wind velocity, phenomena such as fog, frost, and hail storms, and other measures of the
34 weather.

35
36 **Columbia Basin Project** - A multipurpose development on the Upper Columbia River in
37 central Washington. The major facilities of the Columbia Basin Project are Grand Coulee
38 Dam and its impoundment, Lake Roosevelt, the Grand Coulee ~~Powerplant~~**Power plant**
39 complex, the pump/generating plant, Banks Lake, and Potholes Reservoir. In addition,
40 the project includes a well-developed system of canals, dams, reservoirs, drains,
41 wasteways, laterals, and other structures. Current irrigated acreage is about 671,500 acres.

42
43 **Columbia River Basin Fish Accords** - The Accords are agreements between the action
44 agencies, several tribes and two states, which are 10-year action agency commitments for projects
45 to benefit fish affected by the FCRPS. The focus is on ESA-listed anadromous fish and actions to
46 support the FCRPS Biological Opinion. The accords also include some other actions for non-
47 listed fish.

1
2 **Columbia River Basin** - The Columbia River and its tributaries.

3
4 **Columbia River Hatchery Reform Project of 2006** - Congressionally mandated project
5 to develop a performance-based management approach that serves to improve tribal, state
6 and federal management of Columbia River Basin hatcheries in meeting conservation and
7 production goals. The project is implemented through a Hatchery Scientific review
8 Group.

9
10 **Columbia River Treaty** - The Treaty between the United States of America and Canada
11 Relating to Cooperative Development of the Water Resources of the Columbia River
12 Basin, 1964. The Canadian Entity (B.C. Hydro) and the U.S. Entity (represented by the
13 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and Bonneville Power Administration) are responsible for
14 ensuring the provisions of the Columbia River Treaty are fulfilled. It became effective on
15 September 16, 1964. The treaty also authorized the construction of Libby Dam on the
16 Kootenai River in Montana, which creates a reservoir that extends into British Columbia.

17
18 **Compliance Monitoring** - Monitoring to determine whether a specific performance
19 standard, environmental standard, regulation, or law is met. Not commonly required for
20 this program, but when conducted for other purposes this kind of monitoring often
21 generates results of use to the program. Monitoring for dissolved gas levels is an
22 example.

23
24 **Conservation easement** - A legal document that provides specific land-use rights to a
25 secondary party. A perpetual conservation easement usually grants conservation and
26 management rights to a party in perpetuity.

27
28 **Consultation** - All Federal agencies must consult with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
29 or National Marine Fisheries Service when any activity permitted, funded, or conducted
30 by that agency may affect a listed species or designated critical habitat, or is likely to
31 jeopardize proposed species or adversely modify proposed critical habitat. There are two
32 stages of consultation: informal and formal.

33
34 **Coordination** - Within the program coordination is not an action or a subject by itself --
35 it is incidental to the need to make progress on a substantive program area that requires
36 the coordinated work of more than one entity. What type of “coordination” needs to
37 occur in any particular instance is wholly dependent on the work that needs to be
38 accomplished and the particular entities identified that need to work together to
39 accomplish it.

40
41 **Corps of Engineers, U.S. Department of the Army (Corps)** - An agency with the
42 responsibility for design, construction, and operation of civil works, including
43 multipurpose dams and navigation projects.

44
45 **Cost-effective** - As defined in the Northwest Power Act, with regard to actions that
46 implement the Council’s fish and wildlife program, where equally effective alternative

1 means of achieving the same sound biological objective exist, the cost-effective
2 alternative is the one with the lowest economic cost.

3
4 **Current Condition** - See baseline monitoring.

5
6 **Diversion screens** - Wire mesh screens placed at the point where water is diverted from a
7 stream or river. The screens keep fish from entering the diversion channel or pipe.

8
9 **Direct mortality** - Direct mortality is that which occurs directly from some event along
10 the downriver passage through (or around) the hydropower system, that is, mortality
11 directly associated with the hydrosystem.

12
13 **Dissolved gas** - The amount of chemicals normally occurring as gases, such as nitrogen
14 and oxygen that are held in solution in water, expressed in units such as milligrams of the
15 gas per liter of liquid. Supersaturation occurs when these solutions exceed the saturation
16 level of the water (beyond 100 percent).

17
18 **Drawdown** - The release of water from a reservoir for power generation, flood control,
19 irrigation or other water management activity.

20
21 **Ecological function** - The role, or function, that species have within the community or
22 ecosystem in which they occur.

23
24 **Ecosystem** - The set of species and biological communities, including all biotic and
25 abiotic factors and their interactions, existing in a particular environment and geographic
26 area.

27
28 **Effectiveness Monitoring** - Monitoring set up to test cause-and-effect hypotheses about
29 actions: Did the management actions achieve their direct effect or goal? For example, did
30 fencing a riparian area to exclude livestock result in recovery of riparian vegetation?

31
32 **Endangered** - The classification provided to an animal or plant in danger of extinction
33 within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

34
35 **Endangered Species Act of 1973 as amended** - Federal legislation intended to provide a
36 means whereby the ecosystems upon which endangered and threatened species depend
37 may be conserved, and provide programs for the conservation of those species, thus
38 preventing extinction of native plants and animals.

39
40 **Environmental Characteristics** - The environmental conditions or changes sought to
41 achieve the desired changes in population characteristics.

42
43 **Environmental Impact Statement** - A report that states the potential environmental
44 effects of federally controlled projects (e.g., through federal licensing, funding or
45 undertaken by the federal government) that may impact the environment. Environmental

1 impact statements are required by Section 102(2) (C) of the National Environmental
2 Policy Act of 1969 (PL91-190).]

3
4 **Environmental Risk Assessment** - Process to identify and evaluation of the potential
5 negative impacts of proposed actions impacts on the environment.

6
7 **Escapement** - The numbers of salmon and steelhead that return to a specified point of
8 measurement after all natural mortality and harvest have occurred. Spawning escapement
9 consists of those fish that survive to spawn.

10
11 **Estuary** - The part of the wide lower course of a river where its current is met and
12 influenced by the tides. In the both the vertical and horizontal planes, the estuary is a
13 complex transitional zone without sharp boundaries between freshwater and marine
14 habitats.

15
16 **Evolutionarily Significant Unit (ESU)** - A distinct population segment for Pacific
17 salmon (the smallest biological unit considered to be a “species” under the Endangered
18 Species Act). A population will be considered an ESU if: (1) it is substantially
19 reproductively isolated from other co specific units, and (2) it represents an important
20 component in the evolutionary legacy of the species.

21
22 **Extinction** - The natural or human-induced process by which a species, subspecies or
23 population ceases to exist.

24
25 **Extirpated species** - A species no longer surviving in regions that were once part of their
26 range.

27
28 **FCRPS** - Acronym for the Federal Columbia River Power System, which comprises 31
29 federal dams and one non-federal nuclear power plant in the Columbia River Basin. The
30 Bonneville Power Administration sells the output of the FCRPS. The FCRPS comprises
31 14 Federal multipurpose hydroprojects. The 12 projects operated and maintained by the
32 Corps are: Bonneville, The Dalles, John Day, McNary, Chief Joseph, Albeni Falls,
33 Libby, Ice Harbor, Lower Monumental, Little Goose, Lower Granite, and Dworshak
34 dams. Reclamation operates and maintains the following FCRPS projects: Hungry Horse
35 Project and the Columbia Basin Project, which includes Grand Coulee Dam. The FCRPS
36 consultation also includes the mainstem effects of other Reclamation projects in the
37 Columbia Basin.

38
39 **Federal Energy Regulatory Commission (FERC)** - The Commission issues and
40 regulates licenses for construction and operation of non-federal hydroelectric projects and
41 advises federal agencies on the merits of proposed federal multipurpose water
42 development projects.

43
44 **Fish Guidance Efficiency** - The proportion of juvenile fish passing into the turbine
45 intakes that are diverted away from the turbines and into bypass facilities.

46

1 **Fish and wildlife Agencies** - This category includes the Fish and Wildlife Service, U.S.
2 Department of the Interior; the Idaho Department of Fish and Game; the Montana
3 Department of Fish, Wildlife and Parks; the National Marine Fisheries Service of NOAA
4 Fisheries, a division of the U.S. Department of Commerce; the Oregon Department of
5 Fish and Wildlife; and the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife.

6
7 **Fish and Wildlife Lost Opportunity** - New or ongoing projects that respond to a limited
8 opportunity to benefit the fish and wildlife resource and that opportunity will be
9 permanently lost if the requested budget increase and associated work is not approved.

10
11 **Passage efficiency** - The percentage of the total number of fish that pass a dam without
12 passing through the turbine units.

13
14 **Floodplain** - Land adjacent to stream or river that is periodically flooded.

15
16 **Flow(s)** - The rate at which water passes a given point in a stream or river, usually
17 expressed in cubic-feet per second (cfs).

18
19 **Flow augmentation** - Increased flow from release of water from storage dams

20
21 **Forebay** - The part of a dam's reservoir that is immediately upstream of the powerhouse.

22
23 **Fry** - The young of various fishes. The salmon fry or alevins that survive to emerge from
24 the gravel do so as fry. Depending on the species, fry immediately begin to migrate
25 downstream or reside near in the natal stream for months or years before migrating to the
26 sea.

27
28 **Gas supersaturation** - The overabundance of gases in turbulent water, such as at the
29 base of a dam spillway. Can cause a fatal condition in fish similar to the bends.

30
31 **Genetic diversity** - All of the genetic variation within a species. Genetic diversity
32 includes both genetic differences among individuals in a breeding population and genetic
33 differences among different breeding populations.

34
35 **Genetic integrity** - The ability of a breeding population or group of breeding populations
36 to remain adapted to its natural environment.

37
38 **Habitat** - The locality or external environment in which a plant or animal normally lives
39 and grows. As used in this program, habitat includes the ecological functions of the
40 habitat structure.

41
42 **Habitat Conservation Plan** - An agreement between the Secretary of the Interior and
43 either a private entity or a state that specifies conservation measures that will be
44 implemented in exchange for a permit that would allow taking of a threatened or
45 endangered species.

46

1 **Habitat unit (HU)** - A value derived from multiplying the HSI for an evaluation species
2 by the size of the areas for which the HSI was calculated (HU = HSI x size of habitat)
3

4 **Harvest** - The total number or poundage of fish caught and kept from an area over a
5 period of time. Note that landings, catch, and harvest are different.
6

7 **Harvest management** - The process of setting regulations for the commercial,
8 recreational and tribal fish harvest to achieve a specified goal within the fishery.
9

10 **Harvest Rates** - The portion of an ESU that is expected to be harvested based on the
11 management goals set by the fish managers.
12

13 **Hatchery** - An artificial propagation facility designed to produce fish for harvest or
14 spawning escapement. A conservation hatchery differs from a production hatchery in that
15 it specifically seeks to supplement or restore naturally spawning populations.
16

17 **Hatchery Influence** - The effect of released hatchery fish on wild fish, such as
18 competition, productivity, genotype, phenotype, behavior.
19

20 **Hatchery Population** - A population of fish that depends on spawning, incubation,
21 hatching, or rearing in a hatchery or other artificial propagation facility.
22

23 **Hydroelectric power or hydropower** - The generation of electricity using falling water
24 to turn turbo-electric generators.
25

26 **Hydrosystem** - The hydroelectric dams on the Columbia River and its tributaries.
27

28 **Implementation indicators** - Record accomplishments for actions like enhancing water
29 flows in tributaries or improving riparian habitat that are believed to produce desirable
30 biological results.
31

32 **Implementation Monitoring** - Monitoring conducted to determine whether an activity
33 was performed and completed as planned. All actions must have implementation
34 monitoring which must be reported to Bonneville. In some cases this may be as simple as
35 a photo point and a brief description.
36

37 **Implementation Team** - A policy-level work group within the National Marine Fisheries
38 Service's Regional Forum that provides advice on the implementation of the FCRPS
39 biological opinion on the effects of the federal dams in the Columbia River basin. The IT
40 oversees the Technical Management Team, which deals with hydrosystem operations, the
41 System Configuration Team, which deals with structural changes at the mainstem federal
42 dams to improve fish passage, and the Water Quality Team, which addresses water
43 quality issues at the mainstem dams.
44

45 **Irrigation** - Water diverted from surface water bodies or pumped from groundwater and
46 applied to agricultural lands through ditches, canals, dikes, pumps, pipes and other water

1 conveyance systems for the purpose of raising crops in areas that do not have sufficient
2 moisture under natural conditions. Irrigation accounts for most surface water withdrawals
3 in the Columbia River Basin. Total irrigation withdrawals for the Columbia River Basin
4 in the U.S. are about 33 MAF of water each year; about 19 MAF of this withdrawn water
5 returns eventually to the river as return flows and is available for reuse. Irrigation
6 depletions are less than 7 percent of the Columbia River's observed outflow. Total
7 irrigated acreage in the United States portion of the basin in 1990 was between 6.9 and
8 7.1 million acres. The area of land irrigated in any single year varies from 10 to 20
9 percent with water supply and the general economy

10
11 **Irrigation screens** - Screens using wire mesh placed at the point where water is diverted
12 from a stream or river. The screens keep fish from entering the diversion channel or pipe.

13
14 **Jacks** - Small reproductively mature male salmon that return to spawn after spending
15 only one winter in the marine environment.

16
17 **Juvenile** - Fish from approximately one year of age until sexual maturity.

18
19 **Kelt** - Steelhead that return to the sea after spawning and may return to natal streams to
20 spawn again.

21
22 **Kokanee** - A land-locked form of sockeye salmon.

23
24 **Lamprey or Pacific lamprey** - Pacific lamprey are dark bluish gray or dark brown in
25 color and can reach 30 inches in length and weigh over a pound. Pacific lamprey are
26 anadromous. They enter freshwater streams of the Columbia River Basin from July to
27 October and spawn the following spring. Juvenile lamprey will stay burrowed in the
28 substrate of the streams for 4 to 6 years, During its ocean phase of two to three years,
29 Pacific lamprey are scavengers, parasites, or predators on larger prey such as salmon and
30 marine mammals.

31
32 **Large Woody Debris** - Material (such as a log, tree, or branches) with a diameter greater
33 than 10 cm and a length greater than 1 meter in the stream.

34
35 **Life history diversity** - The multitude of life history pathways (temporally and spatially
36 connected sequences life history segments) available for the species to complete its life
37 cycle.

38
39 **Limiting Factors** - Physical, biological, or chemical features (e.g., inadequate spawning
40 habitat, high water temperature, insufficient prey resources) experienced by the fish that
41 result in reductions in abundance, productivity, spatial structure, or diversity. Key
42 limiting factors are those with the greatest impacts on a population's ability to reach its
43 desired status.

44
45 **Listed species** - A species, subspecies, or distinct vertebrate population segment that has
46 been added to the Federal lists of Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants as they

1 appear in sections 17.11 and 17.12 of Title 50 of the Code of Federal Regulations (50
2 CFR 17.11 and 17.12).

3
4 **Lower Snake River Fish and Wildlife Compensation Plan** - Authorized by the Water
5 Resources Development Act of 1976 to mitigate for fish and wildlife losses caused by
6 construction and operation of the four lower Snake River dams.

7
8 **Mainstem** - The main channel of the river in a river basin, as opposed to the streams and
9 smaller rivers that feed into it. In the fish and wildlife program, mainstem refers to
10 entirety of the main channels of the Columbia and Snake rivers.

11
12 **Mainstem passage** - The movement of salmon and steelhead around or through the dams
13 and reservoirs in the Columbia and Snake rivers.

14
15 **Mainstem survival** - The proportion of anadromous fish that survive passage through the
16 dams and reservoirs while migrating in the main channels of the Columbia and Snake
17 rivers.

18
19 **Management indicators** - Track progress in achieving management goals such as
20 implementing hatchery standards or securing positive scientific reviews.

21
22 **Management plans** - The management plan sets forth desired direction for the subbasin on
23 a hierarchical approach, taking into account the science, local conditions, concerns, Treaty
24 rights, and applicable law and policy. It is where the science and the social aspects come
25 together. The hierarchical approach begins with a *vision* for the subbasin, then outlines
26 *biological objectives* describing the desired environmental conditions, and then identifies a
27 set of *strategies* to achieve the objectives. In addition, the management plan includes a
28 *monitoring and evaluation plan* for the strategies that may be implemented. Plans should
29 have a 10-15 year horizon recognizing that additional information and analysis may indicate
30 the need for periodic refinement.

31
32 **Metadata** - Data exist in two forms -- primary data and metadata. Primary data are
33 numbers or counts -- for example, the number of adult fish counted in a given time
34 period, interval, and location. Metadata describe how those numbers were obtained,
35 including the monitoring design (selection of times and locations), objectives, and
36 methods.

37
38 **Migration corridor** - The habitat pathway an animal uses to move from one place to
39 another.

40
41 **Mid-Columbia dams** - Dams owned by the mid-Columbia Public Utility Districts. They
42 include Wells, Rocky Reach, Rock Island, Wanapum and Priest Rapids dams.

43
44 **Mid-Columbia Public Utility Districts (PUDs)** - PUD No. 1 of Grant County, PUD No.
45 2 of Chelan County and PUD No. 1 of Douglas County.

46

1 **Mixed-stock fishery** - A harvest management technique by which different species,
2 strains, races, or stocks are harvested together.

3
4 **Native Species** - A population of fish that has not been substantially impacted by genetic
5 interactions with non-native populations, or by other factors, that persists in all or part of
6 its original range. In limited cases a native population may also exist outside its original
7 range (e.g. in a captive broodstock program).

8
9 **Natural fish** - A fish that has spent essentially all of its life-cycle in the wild and whose
10 parents spawned in the wild.

11
12 **Natural production** - Spawning, incubating, hatching, and rearing fish in rivers, lakes,
13 and streams without human intervention.

14
15 **Naturally spawning populations** - Populations of fish that have completed their entire
16 life cycle in the natural environment and may be the progeny of wild, hatchery or mixed
17 parentage.

18
19 **Nez Perce Water Rights Settlement** - The Settlement resulted in Idaho authorizing up
20 to 427,000 acre-feet of water for flow augmentation, plus an authorization an additional
21 60,000 acre-feet for the same purpose through 2034. These provisions increase the long-
22 term probability of obtaining 427,000 acre-feet, and in some years providing as much as
23 487,000 acre-feet. The Nez Perce Tribal component provides for use of 200,000 acre-feet
24 of water stored in Dworshak Reservoir for flow augmentation and temperature control
25 (cooling) in the lower Snake River in August and September.

26
27 **Northern Pikeminnow** - A giant member of the minnow family, the Northern
28 Pikeminnow (formerly known as Squawfish) is native to the Columbia River and its
29 tributaries. Studies show a Northern Pikeminnow can eat up to 15 young salmon a day.

30
31 **Northwest Power Act** - The Pacific Northwest Electric Power Planning and
32 Conservation Act (16 U.S.C. 839 et seq.), which authorized the creation of the Northwest
33 Power Planning Council. The Act directs the Council to develop the Columbia River
34 Basin Fish and Wildlife Program to protect, mitigate, and enhance fish and wildlife,
35 including related spawning grounds and habitat on the Columbia River and its tributaries,
36 to establish an Independent Scientific Review Panel to review projects implementing this
37 program that are proposed for funding by Bonneville, and to make final
38 recommendations to Bonneville on implementation of projects.

39
40 **Non-native species** - Introduced species (especially invasive exotic species). These can
41 have a distinct advantage in competing with native species because they escape a large
42 percentage of the pathogens and parasites from their native range and are slow to pick up
43 new infections in their newly invaded range. There is convincing evidence that non-
44 native species are continuing to increase in the Columbia Basin aquatic habitats, and
45 climate change is likely to further accelerate their expansion, often at the expense of
46 native species.

1
2 **Nutrient** - An element (oxygen, nitrogen and phosphorus) or compound required for the
3 growth and development of an organism.

4
5 **Nutrient Cycling** - Process by which nutrients are continuously transferred between
6 organisms within an ecosystem.

7
8 **Ocean type** - A juvenile fish that migrates quickly from its natal stream to the ocean and
9 does not spend a winter in fresh water.

10
11 **Off-site mitigation** - The improvement in conditions for fish or wildlife species away
12 from the site of a hydroelectric project that had detrimental effects on fish and/or wildlife,
13 as part or total compensation for those effects. An example of off-site mitigation is the
14 fish passage restoration work being conducted in the Yakima River Basin for the
15 detrimental effects caused by mainstem hydroelectric projects.

16
17 ***Oncorhynchus*** - The genus containing the five species of salmon and steelhead found
18 within the Columbia Basin: Chinook (*O. tshawytscha* also known as tyee or king), chum
19 (*O. keta* also known as dog or calico), coho (*O. kisutch* also known as silver), sockeye
20 (*O. nerka* also known as red, blueback, silver trout and in the resident form as kokanee)
21 and steelhead (*O. mykiss* and known as rainbow in the resident form).

22
23 **Operational losses** - The direct wildlife losses caused by the day-to-day fluctuations in
24 flows and reservoir levels resulting from the operation of the hydrosystem.

25
26 **Parr** - Salmon and steelhead fry that linger in fresh water streams become parr, and after
27 1 to 5 years will smoltify and then migrate to the ocean.

28
29 **Passage** - The movement of migratory fish through, around, or over dams, reservoirs, and
30 other obstructions in a stream or river.

31
32 **Performance measures, standards and targets** - Performance measures are metrics that
33 are monitored and evaluated relative to performance standards (benchmarks) and
34 performance targets (longer-term goals) to assess progress of actions and inform future
35 decisions.

36
37 **Pinniped** - Any of an order or suborder Pinnipedia of aquatic carnivorous mammals with
38 all four limbs modified into flippers. California sea lions, Steller sea lion and harbor seals
39 are salmon, steelhead, lamprey and sturgeon predators that congregate annually below
40 Bonneville Dam.

41
42 **Piscivorous** - Fish-eating.

43
44 **PIT tags** - Passive Integrated Transponder tags are used for identifying individual salmon
45 for monitoring and research purposes. This miniaturized tag consists of an integrated
46 microchip that is programmed to identify individual fish. The tag is inserted into the body
47 cavity of the fish and decoded at selected monitoring sites.

1
2 **Plume** - The area of the Pacific Ocean that is influenced by discharge from the Columbia
3 River, up to 500 miles beyond the mouth of the river.

4
5 **Population**

6 A group of organisms belonging to the same species that occupy a well-defined locality
7 and exhibit reproductive continuity from generation to generation.

8
9 **Predator** - An animal that lives by killing and eating other animals for food.

10
11 **Productivity** - A measure of a population's ability to sustain itself or its ability to
12 rebound from low numbers. The terms "population growth rate" and "population
13 productivity" are interchangeable when referring to measures of population production
14 over an entire life cycle. Productivity can be expressed as the number of recruits (adults)
15 per spawner or the number of smolts per spawner.

16
17 **Quasi-extinction Threshold (QET50)** - This is the point at which a population has
18 become too small to reliably reproduce itself, even though there may be a few fish
19 remaining. Since there is debate about the exact population level at which this condition
20 occurs, several possible levels (50, 30, 10, 1) are considered. Results from short-term quasi-
21 extinction probability modeling are used to help assess near-term (24-year) extinction risk.

22
23 **Range** - Species have areas of occurrence (ranges) that are limited by suitable climatic
24 conditions, especially temperature and moisture availability. Thus, as temperature and
25 precipitation patterns change, species will disappear from parts of their former ranges that
26 have become unsuitable for their existence, and they may appear in new areas where they
27 were formerly absent. Whether or not the ranges move or expand depends on the ability
28 of organisms to disperse or migrate to the areas that become suitable.

29
30 **Rearing** - The juvenile life stage of anadromous fish spent in freshwater rivers, lakes,
31 and streams before they migrate to the ocean. Can also be used to refer to resident species
32 (i.e., trout) in a production facility.

33
34 **Reclamation** - United States Bureau of Reclamation.

35
36 **Recovery/restoration** - The reestablishment of a threatened or endangered species to a
37 self-sustaining level in its natural ecosystem (i.e., to the point where the protective
38 measures of the Endangered Species Act are no longer necessary).

39
40 **Recovery program (plan)** - A strategy for conserving and restoring a threatened or
41 endangered species. An Endangered Species Act recovery plan refers to a plan prepared
42 under section 4(f) of the Act and approved by the Secretary, including: (1) A description
43 of site-specific management actions necessary for recovery; (2) objective, measurable
44 criteria that can be used as a basis for removing the species from threatened or
45 endangered status; and (3) estimates of the time and cost required to implement recovery.
46 (For Pacific salmon, "Secretary" refers to the Secretary of Commerce.)

1 **Redd** - Nest made in gravel dug by a fish for egg deposition (and then filled), and
2 associated gravel mounds.

3
4 **Removable Spillway Weir (RSW)** - A fish passage technology that is an overflow
5 structure installed in a dam's spillway bay. It provides a more surface-oriented passage
6 route with less delay and stress for juvenile anadromous fish.

7
8 **Recruitment** - The number of young-of-year fish entering a population in a given year.

9
10 **Recruit-Spawner (R/S)** - A measure of productivity that directly reflects the ability of a
11 population to sustain itself. A R/S estimate simply reflects the rate at which spawning
12 adults in one generation are replaced by spawning adults in the next generation. A R/S
13 value < 1.0 indicates the population is not replacing itself. If this pattern continues over a
14 sufficient period of time, the population will become extinct. Conversely, $R/S > 1.0$
15 indicates the population is more than replacing itself; $R/S = 1.0$ means the population is
16 exactly replacing itself. Estimating R/S requires a time series of data on adult returns.

17
18 **Remand Collaboration** - In 2005 Federal Judge James Redden ordered NMFS and the
19 Action Agencies to form a Policy Work Group (PWG) to collaborate with sovereign
20 States and Tribes to develop items to be included in the FCRPS proposed action, clarify
21 policy issues, and reach agreement or narrow the areas of disagreement on scientific and
22 technical information. The members of the PWG were NMFS, the Action Agencies,
23 Idaho, Montana, Oregon, and Washington, and Native American Tribes (the Nez Perce
24 Tribe, the Confederated Tribes of the Umatilla Indian Reservation, the Confederated
25 Tribes of the Warm Springs Reservation of Oregon, the Confederated Tribes and Bands
26 of the Yakama Indian Nation, the Confederated Tribes of the Colville Reservation, the
27 Spokane Tribe of Indians, and Kootenai Tribe of Idaho).

28
29 **Reservoir** - A body of water collected and stored in an artificial lake behind a dam.

30
31 **Resident fish** - Fish that spend their entire life cycle in freshwater. For program
32 purposes, resident fish includes landlocked anadromous fish (e.g., white sturgeon,
33 kokanee and coho), as well as traditionally defined resident fish species.

34
35 **Resident fish substitutions** - The enhancement of resident fish to address losses of
36 salmon and steelhead in those areas permanently blocked to anadromous (ocean-
37 migrating) fish as a result of hydroelectric dams.

38
39 **Riffle** - A shallow extending across the bed of a stream over which water flows swiftly so
40 that the surface of the water is broken in waves.

41
42 **Riparian areas and wetlands** - Riparian areas and wetlands are habitats where terrestrial
43 and aquatic ecosystems are most closely linked. They are among the most diverse and
44 dynamic habitats on the Earth, and are especially important sources of plant and animal
45 species diversity in arid areas such as the interior Columbia River Basin. These habitats
46 are critical to a broad range of wildlife.

1
2 **Riparian habitat** - Habitat along the banks of streams, lakes or rivers.
3
4 **Rivermile** - Miles calculated from the mouth of the river or, for upstream tributaries,
5 from the confluence with the main river.
6
7 **Rule curves** - Graphic guides to the use of storage water. They are developed to define
8 certain operating rights, entitlements, obligations and limitations for each reservoir.
9
10 **Run** - A population of fish of the same species consisting of one or more stocks
11 migrating at a distinct time.
12
13 **Salmonid** - A fish of the Salmonidae family, which includes soft-finned fish such as
14 salmon, trout, and whitefish.
15
16 **Section 7** - The section of the Endangered Species Act that requires all Federal agencies,
17 in "consultation" with the Service, to insure that their actions are not likely to jeopardize
18 the continued existence of listed species or result in destruction or adverse modification
19 of critical habitat.
20
21 **Self-Sustaining Population** - A population of salmonids, sturgeon, lamprey, native or
22 non-native fish that exists in sufficient numbers to replace itself through time without
23 supplementation with hatchery fish. It does not necessarily produce surplus fish for
24 harvest.
25
26 **Settlement** - An agreement between natural resource trustees and responsible parties that
27 specifies the terms under which liability is resolved.
28
29 **Sinuosity** - The amount of bending, winding and curving in a stream or river. Often
30 defined as channel length divided by straight line length.
31
32 **Smolt** - A juvenile salmon or steelhead migrating to the ocean and undergoing
33 physiological changes (smoltification) to adapt its body from a freshwater to a saltwater
34 existence, typically in its second year.
35
36 **Smoltification** - Process of physiologically changing from fry or parr to smolt.
37
38 **Spatial** - Spatial, in the context of the program, refers to the geographic distribution of
39 individuals in a population unit and the processes that generate that distribution.
40
41 **Spawn** - The act of fish releasing and fertilizing eggs.
42
43 **Species** - A group of individuals of common ancestry that closely resemble each other
44 structurally and physiologically and that can interbreed, producing fertile offspring.

1 For purposes of the Endangered Species Act (ESA), a species is defined to include “any
2 distinct population segment of any species of vertebrate fish or wildlife which interbreeds
3 when mature.”

4 A population (or group of populations) will be considered “distinct” (and hence a
5 “species”) for purposes of the ESA if it represents an evolutionarily significant unit
6 (ESU) of the biological species. A population must satisfy two criteria to be considered
7 an ESU:

- 8 1. It must be reproductively isolated from other conspecific population units, and
- 9 2. It must represent an important component in the evolutionary legacy of the
10 species.

11
12 **Spill** - Releasing water through spillways at a dam rather than through the turbines.

13
14 **Spillway** - The channel or passageway around or over a dam through which excess water
15 is released or “spilled” past the dam without going through the turbines. A spillway is a
16 safety valve for a dam and, as such, must be capable of discharging major floods without
17 damaging the dam, while maintaining the reservoir level below some predetermined
18 maximum level.

19
20 **Stock** - A population of fish spawning in a particular stream during a particular season.
21 Stocks of fish generally do not interbreed with stocks spawning in a different stream or at
22 a different time.

23
24 **Stray** - An individual that breeds in a population other than that of its parents.

25
26 **Stream type migrant** - A juvenile fish that spends a winter or longer at or below the
27 natal stream before migrating to the ocean.

28
29 **Stream morphology** - The study of the form and structure of streams, used
30 interchangeably with stream geomorphology.

31
32 **Subbasin** - A set of adjoining watersheds with similar ecological conditions and
33 tributaries that ultimately connects, flowing into the same river or lake. Subbasins contain
34 major tributaries to the Columbia and Snake rivers. There are 62 subbasins in the
35 Columbia River Watershed.

36
37 **Subyearling** - Fish that are less than 1 year old

38
39 **Subbasin assessment** - The assessment is the technical evaluation of the biological and
40 physical characteristics of the subbasin. Its primary purpose is to bring together technical
41 information for the analysis needed to develop biological objectives.

42
43 **Subbasin planning** - A coordinated systemwide approach to planning in which each
44 subbasin in the Columbia system is evaluated for its potential to produce fish in order to
45 contribute to the goal of the overall system. Subbasin planning emphasizes the
46 integration of fish and wildlife habitat, fish passage, harvest management, and
47 production.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46

Supplementation - The use of artificial propagation to reestablish or increase the abundance of naturally reproducing populations through the release of hatchery fry and juvenile fish in the natural environment.

Tailrace - The canal or channel that carries water away from the dam.

Tailwater - The water surface immediately downstream from a dam.

Take - From Section 3(18) of the Federal Endangered Species Act: "The term 'take' means to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct."

Target species - A species singled out for attention because of its harvest significance or cultural value, or because it represents a significant group of ecological functions in a particular habitat type.

Technical Management Team - A technical working group established by the National Marine Fisheries Service to provide advice on how to operate the federal dams in the Columbia River Basin in a manner that minimizes fish and wildlife impacts. The TMT deals with issues such as reservoir storage levels, flow augmentation, and spill.

Terrestrial - Of or relating to the earth or its inhabitants. Non aquatic.

Threatened - The classification provided to an animal or plant likely to become endangered within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

Transboundary - Refers to the United States and Canadian border.

Transboundary Stocks - Stocks whose range and/or migratory routes cross political jurisdictions.

Transportation - Collecting migrating juvenile fish and transporting them around the dams using barges or trucks.

Treaty - The Treaty between the United States of America and Canada Relating to Cooperative Development of the Water Resources of the Columbia River Basin, 1964. The Canadian Entity (B.C. Hydro) and the U.S. Entity (represented by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and Bonneville Power Administration) are responsible for ensuring the provisions of the Columbia River Treaty are fulfilled. It became effective on September 16, 1964. The treaty also authorized the construction of Libby Dam on the Kootenai River in Montana, which creates a reservoir that extends into British Columbia.

Treaty Rights - Rights of Indian tribes that were reserved by the 1855 Stevens Treaties between Indian tribes and the United States government. These reserved rights include

1 the right of "taking fish at all usual and accustomed grounds and stations" as well as the
2 "privilege of hunting, gathering roots and berries and pasturing horses on open and
3 unclaimed lands." Certain of these rights have been fairly well defined by judicial
4 decisions, such as those pertaining to treaty fishing.

5
6 **Tribes** - In the Council's fish and wildlife program, these include the Burns-Paiute Tribe;
7 the Coeur d'Alene Tribes; the Confederated Tribes of the Colville Reservation; the
8 Confederated Salish-Kootenai Tribes of the Flathead Reservation; the Confederated
9 Tribes of the Umatilla Reservation of Oregon; the Confederated Tribes of the Warm
10 Springs Reservation of Oregon; the Confederated Tribes and Bands of the Yakama
11 Nation; the Kalispel Tribe of Indians; the Kootenai Tribe of Idaho; the Nez Perce Tribe
12 of Idaho; the Shoshone-Paiutes of the Duck Valley Reservation; the Shoshone-Bannock
13 Tribes of the Fort Hall Reservation; and the Spokane Tribe of Indians.

14
15 **Turbidity** - A measure of light penetration in a body of water. Higher turbidity indicates
16 "murkier" water conditions.

17
18 **Uplands** - Land at higher elevations than the alluvial plain or low stream terrace; all
19 lands outside the riparian-wetland and aquatic zones.

20
21 **U.S. v Oregon** - The 1969 federal court decision that reaffirmed treaty rights to fish. The
22 decision only applies to Washington and Oregon treaty tribes and is the basis for
23 allocating harvest of salmon in the Columbia River to those tribes.

24
25 **Water Management Plan** - The purpose of the Water Management Plan (WMP) is to
26 layout how the Action Agencies plan to operate the FCRPS projects (Bonneville Dam and
27 above - not including the Willamette Projects or Upper Snake River) during the current water
28 year (October – September).

29
30 **Water Right** - A legal authorization to use a certain amount of public water for specific
31 beneficial use or uses.

32
33 **Watershed** - The area that drains into a stream or river. A subbasin is typically composed
34 of several watersheds.

35
36 **Weak stock** - A stock of fish of which the long-term survival is in doubt. Typically this
37 is a stock in which the population is small and is barely reproducing itself or is not
38 reproducing itself. While ESA-listed stocks are considered weak stocks, the term also
39 includes other populations that would not yet qualify for ESA listing.

40
41 **Wildlife** - Animals living in a natural state, unimpeded and undomesticated by humans.

42
43 **Wildlife management** - The application of scientific or technical principles to the
44 practice of manipulating wildlife populations, either directly through regulating the
45 numbers, ages, and sex ratios harvested, or indirectly by providing favorable habitat
46 conditions and alleviating limiting factors.

47

- 1 **Wild fish** - Fish that have maintained successful natural reproduction with little or no
- 2 supplementation from hatcheries.
- 3
- 4 **Yearling** - Fish one year old or older.

1
2
3

Acronyms

Acronym	Terminology
AFEP	Anadromous Fish Evaluation Program
AHA	All “H” Analyzer
ALF	Albeni Falls Dam
APRE	Artificial Production Review Evaluation
BA	Biological Assessment
BGS	Behavioral guidance structure
BiOp	Biological Opinion
BLM	Bureau of Land Management
BMP	Best Management Practice
BOG	Budget Oversight Group
BON	Bonneville Dam
BOR	U.S. Bureau of Reclamation
BRN	Brownlee Dam
BY	brood year
CBT	Columbia Basin Trust
CBWTP	Columbia Basin Water Transaction Program
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
cfs	Cubic feet per second. A unit commonly used to quantify discharge rate.
CHJ	Chief Joseph Dam
Corps	U. S. Army Corps of Engineers
CREP	Conservation Reserve Enhancement Program
CRITFC	Columbia River Intertribal Fish Commission (Yakama, Nez Perce, Umatilla and Warm Springs tribes)
CWA	Clean Water Act
CWT	coded-wire tag
DPS	Distinct Population Segment
DWR	Dworshak Dam
EPA	U. S. Environmental Protection Agency
ESA	Endangered Species Act
ESU	evolutionarily significant unit
FCOP	Flood Control Operating Plan
FCRPS	Federal Columbia River Power System
FERC	U.S. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission
FGE	Fish Guidance Efficiency
GBD	Gas bubble disease
HCD	Hells Canyon Dam
HCP	Habitat Conservation Plan
HEP	Habitat Evaluation Procedure
HGH	Hungry Horse Dam
HGMP	Hatchery and Genetic Management Plan

HOF	Hatchery origin fish
HSRG	Hatchery Scientific Review Group
HU	Habitat Unit
IHR	Ice Harbor Dam
IMW	Intensively Monitored Watershed
IOSC	Idaho Office of Species Conservation
ISAB	Independent Scientific Advisory Board
ISRP	Independent Science Review Panel
JBS	Juvenile Bypass System
JDA	John Day Dam
Kcfs	Thousand cubic feet per second
LCFRB	Lower Columbia Fish Recovery Board
LCREP	Lower Columbia River Estuary Partnership
LIB	Libby Dam
LGS	Little Goose Dam
LMN	Lower Monumental Dam
LWG	Lower Granite Dam
MAF	Million acre-feet
MCN	McNary Dam
MERR	Monitoring, Evaluation, Research and Reporting
MFWP	Montana Fish, Wildlife & Parks
MMPA	Marine Mammal Protection Act
MOC	mid-Oregon coast
MPG	Major population group
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NEOH	Northeast Oregon Hatchery
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOF	Natural origin fish
NWFSC	Northwest Fisheries Science Center
ODFW	Oregon Department of Fish and Wildlife
PA	Proposed Action
PIT-tag	Passive Integrated Transponder (tag)
PUD	Public Utility District
PWG	Policy Work Group
QET	Quasi-extinction Threshold
RMP	Resource Management Plan (for exemption from ESA section 9 take prohibitions under limit 6 of the 4(d) rule)
RPA	Reasonable and Prudent Alternative
RSW	Removable Spillway Weir
SAFE	Select Area Fisheries Enhancement
SAR	Smolt to adult return rate
SCH	Spring Creek Hatchery (tule fall Chinook returning to Spring Creek Hatchery)
SLED	Sea Lion Exclusion device

SRSRB	Snake River Salmon Recovery Board
TDA	The Dalles dam
TDG	Total Dissolved Gas
TMDL	Total Maximum Daily Load
TRT	Technical Recovery Team
TSW	Temporary Spillway Weir
UCSRB	Upper Columbia Salmon Recovery Board
UCUT	Upper Columbia United Tribes
URB	upper river brights (naturally spawning bright fall Chinook normally migrating past McNary Dam)
URC	Upper Rule Curve
USF&WS	U. S. Fish & Wildlife Service
USRT	Upper Snake River Tribes
VAR-Q	variable flow schedule - VAR (variable) Q (flow)
WDFW	Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife
WSF	Water supply forecast
YBFWRB	Yakima Basin Fish & Wildlife Recovery Board

1
2

1 **Appendix B: Hydroelectric Development Conditions**

3 **Future Hydroelectric Development**

5 Much of this program has focused on mitigating damage done to Columbia River Basin
6 fish and wildlife by hydropower development and operations in the past. But the future is
7 equally important. The Corps of Engineers and the Bureau of Reclamation continue to
8 study the need for additional federal hydroelectric projects and to plan for new
9 development in the basin. The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission has many permits
10 and applications pending for hydroelectric development in Idaho, Oregon, Montana and
11 Washington. Many of those applications and permits are for projects throughout the
12 Columbia River Basin. Dozens of small or medium-sized hydroelectric projects are
13 proposed for tributary drainage basins that contain important anadromous fish habitat.
14 However, most new hydroelectric development will be accomplished by private or non-
15 federal public entities licensed by the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission.

17 Many of the proposals are for hydroelectric projects that would produce less than 5
18 megawatts of electricity. Although individual small projects may have no significant
19 adverse effects on the fish and wildlife resources of the basin, the cumulative effects of
20 such development throughout a river basin could be quite harmful. These cumulative
21 effects need to be taken into account fully.

23 The Council estimates that 4,600 stream miles of Columbia River Basin salmon and
24 steelhead spawning and rearing habitat have been lost to development, not including
25 losses of migration routes and of resident fish and wildlife habitat. Minimizing further
26 habitat loss is especially important in view of the Council's goal of doubling salmon and
27 steelhead runs in the Columbia River Basin consistent with system policies (see Sections
28 2 and 4). Development in critical fish and wildlife areas leads to divisive and expensive
29 conflicts that the Council believes can be avoided through resource planning.

31 The Council finds that future hydroelectric developers in the basin should be required to
32 mitigate harm to fish and wildlife and has adopted program measures calling for such
33 mitigation. New hydroelectric development has the potential to cause further damage to
34 the basin's fish and wildlife resources as well as to negate ongoing Council efforts to
35 remedy damage caused by the existing hydropower system. Federal agencies also should
36 assess and mitigate the cumulative effects on fish and wildlife of multiple hydroelectric
37 projects.

39 The Council also intends to continue to review applications for Federal Energy
40 Regulatory Commission permits and licenses and for Corps of Engineers and Bureau of
41 Reclamation proposals for hydroelectric development. The purpose of this review is to
42 identify program measures related to the proposed development to ensure that any new
43 development in the basin is consistent with this fish and wildlife program and the
44 Council's Northwest Power Plan. The Council's reviews would complement and
45 recognize, not supplant, the role of the fish and wildlife agencies and tribes in reviewing
46 proposals for hydroelectric projects.

1
2 **1. Future Hydroelectric Development**

3
4 **a. Conditions**

5
6 **Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Corps of Engineers, Bureau of**
7 **Reclamation and Bonneville**

8
9 Do not license, exempt from license, relicense, propose, recommend, agree to acquire or
10 wheel power from, grant billing credits for, or otherwise support any hydroelectric
11 development in the Columbia River Basin without specifically providing for these
12 development conditions:

- 13
- 14 • Consultation with the fish managers and the Council throughout study, design,
15 construction and operation of the project;
 - 16
 - 17 • Specific plans for flows and fish facilities prior to construction;
 - 18
 - 19 • The best available means for aiding downstream and upstream passage of
20 anadromous and resident fish;
 - 21
 - 22 • Flows and reservoir levels of sufficient quantity and quality to protect spawning,
23 incubation, rearing and migration;
 - 24
 - 25 • Full compensation for unavoidable fish losses or fish habitat losses through
26 habitat restoration or replacement, appropriate propagation, or similar measures
27 consistent with the provisions of this program;
 - 28
 - 29 • Assurance that the project will not inundate the usual and accustomed, traditional
30 or contemporary fishing places of any tribe without tribal approval;
 - 31
 - 32 • Assurance that the project will not degrade fish habitat or reduce numbers of fish
33 in such a way that the exercise of treaty or executive order tribal rights will be
34 diminished;
 - 35
 - 36 • Assurance that all fish protection measures are fully operational at the time the
37 project begins operation;
 - 38
 - 39 • The collection of data needed to monitor and evaluate the results of the fish
40 protection efforts; and
 - 41
 - 42 • Assurance that the project will not degrade water quality beyond the point
43 necessary to sustain sensitive fish species (as designated in consultation with the
44 fish managers).
 - 45

1 Do not license, relicense, exempt from license, propose, recommend, agree to acquire or
2 wheel power from, grant billing credits for, or otherwise support any hydroelectric
3 development in the Columbia River Basin without specifically providing for these
4 development conditions:

- 5
- 6 • Consultation with wildlife managers and the Council throughout study, design,
7 construction and operation of the project;
- 8
- 9 • Avoiding inundation of wildlife habitat, insofar as practical;
- 10
- 11 • Timing construction activities, insofar as practical, to reduce adverse effects on
12 nesting and wintering grounds;
- 13
- 14 • Locating temporary access roads in areas to be inundated;
- 15
- 16 • Constructing subimpoundments and using all suitable excavated material to create
17 islands, if appropriate, before the reservoir is filled;
- 18
- 19 • Avoiding all unnecessary or premature clearing of land before filling the
20 reservoir;
- 21
- 22 • Providing artificial nest structures when appropriate;
- 23
- 24 • Avoiding construction, insofar as practical, within 250 meters of active raptor
25 nests;
- 26
- 27 • Avoiding critical riparian habitat (as designated in consultation with the wildlife
28 managers) when clearing, riprapping, dredging, disposing of spoils and wastes,
29 constructing diversions, and relocating structures and facilities;
- 30
- 31 • Replacing riparian vegetation if natural revegetation is inadequate;
- 32
- 33 • Creating subimpoundments by diking backwater slough areas, creating islands
34 and nesting areas;
- 35
- 36 • Regulating water levels to reduce adverse effects on wildlife during critical
37 wildlife periods (as defined in consultation with the fish and wildlife managers);
- 38
- 39 • Improving the wildlife capacity of undisturbed portions of new project areas
40 (through such activities as managing vegetation, reducing disturbance, and
41 supplying food, cover and water) as compensation for otherwise unmitigated
42 harm to wildlife and wildlife habitat in other parts of the project area;
- 43
- 44 • Acquiring land or management rights, such as conservation easements, where
45 necessary to compensate for lost wildlife habitat at the same time other project
46 land is acquired and including the associated costs in project cost estimates;

- 1
- 2 • Funding operation and management of the acquired wildlife land for the life of
- 3 the project;
- 4
- 5 • Granting management easement rights on the acquired wildlife lands to
- 6 appropriate management entities;
- 7
- 8 • Collecting data needed to monitor and evaluate the results of the wildlife
- 9 protection efforts;
- 10
- 11 • Assurance that the project will not inundate the usual and accustomed, traditional
- 12 or contemporary hunting places of any tribe without tribal approval; and
- 13
- 14 • Assurance that the project will not degrade wildlife habitat or reduce numbers of
- 15 wildlife in such a way that the exercise of treaty or executive order tribal rights
- 16 will be diminished.
- 17

18 Ensure that all licenses for hydroelectric projects or documents that propose, recommend
19 or otherwise support hydroelectric development explain in detail how the provisions of
20 this section will be accomplished or the reasons why the provisions cannot be
21 incorporated into the project.

22

23

24 **2. Protected Areas**

25

26 From the inception of this program, the Council has supported the concept of protecting
27 some streams and wildlife habitats from hydroelectric development, where the Council
28 believes such development would have major negative impacts that could not be
29 reversed. Beginning in 1983, the Council directed extensive studies of existing habitat
30 and has analyzed alternative means of protection. In 1988, the Council concluded that: 1)
31 the studies had identified fish and wildlife resources of critical importance to the region;
32 2) mitigation techniques cannot assure that all adverse impacts of hydroelectric
33 development on these fish and wildlife populations will be mitigated; 3) even small
34 hydroelectric projects may have unacceptable individual and cumulative impacts on these
35 resources; and 4) protecting these resources and habitats from hydroelectric development
36 is consistent with an adequate, efficient, economical, and reliable power supply. The
37 Council, relying on these studies, designated certain river reaches in the basin as
38 “protected areas,” where the Council believes hydroelectric development would have
39 unacceptable risks of loss to fish and wildlife species of concern, their productive
40 capacity or their habitat.

41

42 River reaches to be protected are those reaches or portions of reaches listed on the
43 “Protected Areas List” adopted by the Council on August 10, 1988, and subsequently.
44 For each river reach listed on the Protected Areas List, the fish and wildlife to be
45 protected are those on the list. The Council will supply a copy of the Protected Areas List
46 to any party free of charge.

1
2 | **a. Protect Areas From New Hydropower Development**
3

4 The following are not affected by protected areas:
5

- 6 | • Any hydroelectric facility or its existing impoundment that as of August 10, 1988,
7 had been licensed or exempted from licensing by the Federal Energy Regulatory
8 Commission;
9
- 10 | • The relicensing of such hydroelectric facility or its existing impoundment;
11
- 12 | • Any modification of any existing hydroelectric facility or its existing
13 impoundment; and
14
- 15 | • Any addition of hydroelectric generation facilities to a non-hydroelectric dam or
16 diversion structure.
17
- 18 | • Transition projects: The Council recognizes that there exist, as of August 10,
19 1988, applications for hydroelectric projects that are in various stages of
20 completion before the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission. In many cases the
21 applicants have made substantial investments and have completed, or nearly
22 completed, agreements with all interested parties, including state fish and wildlife
23 agencies. The Council recognizes that the Federal Energy Regulatory
24 Commission may be obligated to complete its processes on these applications, but
25 expects where possible that this measure will be taken into account to the fullest
26 extent practicable.
27

28 The Council recognizes that there may exist preliminary permits or applications
29 for licenses or exemptions for hydroelectric projects at sites that were not
30 previously within protected areas, but which may be included within protected
31 areas as a result of amendments approved by the Council. An important purpose
32 of protected areas is to encourage developers to site projects outside protected
33 areas. The Council therefore exempts from the effect of an amendment that
34 designates a previously unprotected area as protected, any project for which the
35 developer had obtained a preliminary permit or filed an application for license or
36 exemption prior to the date on which the Council entered rulemaking on the
37 amendment. However, it is the Council's intention that the Federal Energy
38 Regulatory Commission give full consideration to the protection of fish and
39 wildlife resources located at these project sites and provide suitable protection and
40 mitigation for such resources in the event that a license or exemption is approved.
41

- 42 | • Effect on water rights and riparian areas: This measure should not be interpreted
43 to authorize the appropriation of water by any entity or individual, affect water
44 rights or jurisdiction over water, or alter or establish any water or water-related
45 right. The Council does not intend this measure to alter or affect any state or
46 federal water quality classification or standards, or alter any management plan

1 developed pursuant to the national Forest Management Act, 16 U.S.C. 1601, et
2 seq., or the Federal Land Policy Management Act, 43 U.S.C. 1701, et seq., except
3 to the extent planning decisions are directly related to hydropower licensing and
4 development. Nor should this measure be interpreted to alter, amend, repeal,
5 interpret, modify, or conflict with any interstate compact made by the states. If
6 this measure is found by a court or other competent authority to conflict with any
7 other interstate compact, this measure will terminate with respect to the area
8 involved, without further action of the Council.

9
10 This measure applies to river reaches, or portions of river reaches, and to river
11 banks or surrounding areas only where such areas would be directly affected by a
12 proposed hydroelectric project. In adopting this measure, the Council has not
13 attempted to balance all the factors that may be relevant to land management
14 determinations.

15
16
17 **b. Bonneville Power Administration**

18
19 Do not acquire power from hydroelectric projects located in protected areas. The Council
20 believes that the Long-Term Intertie Access Policy’s reliance on protected areas is
21 consistent with the Council’s power plan and fish and wildlife program as they apply to
22 fish and wildlife in the Columbia River Basin. The Council continues to recommend that
23 Bonneville adopt a similar policy with respect to protected areas outside the Columbia
24 River Basin.

25
26 **c. Federal Energy Regulatory Commission**

27
28 Under the Northwest Power Act, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, and all
29 other federal agencies responsible for managing, operating, or regulating federal or non-
30 federal hydroelectric facilities located on the Columbia River or its tributaries are
31 required to take protected area designations into account to the fullest extent practicable
32 at all relevant stages of decision-making processes. The Council recognizes that the
33 Federal Energy Regulatory Commission makes licensing and exemption decisions for
34 nonfederal projects, and does not expect that the Commission will abandon its normal
35 processes with regard to projects located in protected areas. Rather, consistent with
36 Section 4(h)(11) of the Northwest Power Act, the Council expects that the Federal
37 Energy Regulatory Commission will take the Council’s judgment into account, and
38 implement that judgment in licensing and exemption decisions unless the Federal Energy
39 Regulatory Commission’s legal responsibilities require otherwise.

40
41
42
43
44
45
46

1
2 **3. Additional Protections and Consistency of Hydropower Development**

3
4 | **a. Cumulative Effects**

5
6 **Federal Project Operators and Regulators**

7
8 Review simultaneously all applications or proposals for hydroelectric development in a
9 single river drainage, through consolidated hearings, environmental impact statements or
10 assessments, or other appropriate methods. This review shall assess cumulative
11 environmental effects of existing and proposed hydroelectric development on fish and
12 wildlife.

13
14 | **b. Ensure Consistency With This Program**

15
16 **Federal Energy Regulatory Commission**

17
18 Require all applicants for licenses (including license renewals, amendments and
19 exemptions) and preliminary permits in the Columbia River Basin to demonstrate in their
20 applications how the proposed project would take this program into account to the fullest
21 extent practicable.

22 Provide the Council with copies of all applications for licenses (including license
23 renewals, amendments and exemptions) and preliminary permits in the Columbia River
24 Basin so that the Council can comment in a timely manner on the consistency of the
25 proposed project with this fish and wildlife program. This provision is not intended to
26 supplant review of such applications by the fish and wildlife agencies and tribes.

27
28 **Federal Land Managers and Federal and State Fish and Wildlife Agencies**

29
30 Incorporate pertinent elements of the fish and wildlife program in the terms and
31 conditions they apply to projects exempted from licensing under Federal Energy
32 Regulatory Commission exemption procedures. The Council also requests federal land
33 managers to incorporate this program into their permit procedures related to hydroelectric
34 development on lands they manage.

35
36 **Corps of Engineers, Bureau of Reclamation, and any Other Federal Agency**
37 **Studying or Proposing Hydroelectric Development in the Columbia River Basin**

38
39 Provide opportunity for Council review and comment.
|

1 **Appendix C: Wildlife Provisions**

2

3 | **Mitigation Priorities**

4

5 **Bonneville and Wildlife Managers**

6

7 Ensure that wildlife mitigation projects implemented in fulfillment of this program are
8 consistent with the basinwide implementation priorities described in Tables 11-1, 11-2
9 and 11-3, below.

10

<i>Table 11-1 Lower Columbia Subbasin Wildlife Mitigation Priorities</i>	
Habitat Types--Target Species	Priority
Riparian/Riverine <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Great Blue Heron	High
Old Growth Forest <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Northern Spotted Owl	High
Wetlands <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Great Blue Heron• Band-tailed Pigeon• Western Pond Turtle	High
Coniferous Forest <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ruffed Grouse• Elk• American Black Bear/Cougar	Medium

Table 11-2 Upper Columbia Subbasin Wildlife Mitigation Priorities

Habitat Types--Target Species	Priority
Riparian/River <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bald Eagle (breeding) • Black-capped Chickadee • Peregrine Falcon 	High
Shrub-Steppe <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sharp-tailed Grouse • Pygmy Rabbit • Sage Grouse • Mule Deer 	High
Wetlands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mallard • Redhead 	High
Islands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • White Pelicans 	Medium
Agricultural Lands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Swainson's Hawk • Ring-necked Pheasant 	Low

Table 11-3 Snake River Subbasin Wildlife Mitigation Priorities

Habitat Type--Target Species	Priority
Riparian/Riverine <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bald Eagle (breeding) • Bald Eagle (wintering) • River Otter • Black-capped Chickadee • Peregrine Falcon • Ruffed Grouse 	High
Wetlands <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mallard 	High
Native Grasslands and Shrubs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mule Deer/Elk • White-tailed Deer • Sharp-tailed Grouse 	Medium
Coniferous Forest <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elk 	Medium
Old Growth Forest <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pileated Woodpecker 	Medium
Lowland Forest <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • White-tailed deer 	Low

Table 11-4 identifies the losses due to hydropower construction at federal dams in the Columbia River Basin.

<i>Table 11-4 Estimated Losses Due to Hydropower Construction (losses are preceded by a “-”, gains by a “+”)</i>	
Species	Total Habitat Units
Albeni Falls	
• Mallard Duck	-5,985
• Canada Goose	-4,699
• Redhead Duck	-3,379
• Breeding Bald Eagle	-4,508
• Wintering Bald Eagle	-4,365
• Black-Capped Chickadee	-2,286
• White-tailed Deer	-1,680
• Muskrat	-1,756
• Yellow Warbler	+171
Lower Snake Projects	
• Downy Woodpecker	-364.9
• Song Sparrow	-287.6
• Yellow Warbler	-927.0
• California Quail	-20,508.0
• Ring-necked Pheasant	-2,646.8
• Canada Goose	-2,039.8
Anderson Ranch	
• Mallard	-1,048
• Mink	-1,732
• Yellow Warbler	-361
• Black Capped Chickadee	-890
• Ruffed Grouse	-919
• Blue Grouse	-1,980
• Mule Deer	-2,689
• Peregrine Falcon	-1,222 acres*
* Acres of riparian habitat lost. Does not require purchase of any lands.	
Black Canyon	
• Mallard	-270
• Mink	-652
• Canada Goose	-214
• Ring-necked Pheasant	-260
• Sharp-tailed Grouse	-532
• Mule Deer	-242
• Yellow Warbler	+8
• Black-capped Chickadee	+68
Deadwood	
• Mule Deer	-2080
• Mink	-987
• Spruce Grouse	-1411
• Yellow Warbler	-309

Table 11-4 (cont.) Estimated Losses Due to Hydropower Construction
(losses are preceded by a “-”, gains by a “+”)

Species	Total Habitat Units
Palisades	
• Bald Eagle	-5,941 breeding -18,565 wintering
• Yellow Warbler/	-718 scrub-shrub
• Black Capped Chickadee	-1,358 forested
• Elk/Mule Deer	-2,454
• Waterfowl and Aquatic Furbearers	-5,703
• Ruffed Grouse	-2,331
• Peregrine Falcon*	-1,677 acres of forested wetland -832 acres of scrub-shrub wetland +68 acres of emergent wetland
* Acres of riparian habitat lost. Does not require purchase of any lands.	
Willamette Basin Projects	
• Black-tailed Deer	-17,254
• Roosevelt Elk	-15,295
• Black Bear	-4,814
• Cougar	-3,853
• Beaver	-4,477
• River Otter	-2,408
• Mink	-2,418
• Red Fox	-2,590
• Ruffed Grouse	-11,145
• California Quail	-2,986
• Ring-necked Pheasant	-1,986
• Band-tailed Pigeon	-3,487
• Western Gray Squirrel	-1,354
• Harlequin Duck	-551
• Wood Duck	-1,947
• Spotted Owl	-5,711
• Pileated Woodpecker	-8,690
• American Dipper	-954
• Yellow Warbler	-2,355
• Common Merganser	+1,042
• Greater Scaup	+820
• Waterfowl	+423
• Bald Eagle	+5,693
• Osprey	+6,159
Grand Coulee	
• Sage Grouse	-2,746
• Sharp-tailed Grouse	-32,723
• Ruffed Grouse	-16,502
• Mourning Dove	-9,316
• Mule Deer	-27,133
• White-tailed Deer	-21,362
• Riparian Forest	-1,632
• Riparian Shrub	-27
• Canada Goose Nest Sites	-74

Table 11-4 (cont.) Estimated Losses Due to Hydropower Construction
(losses are preceded by a “-”, gains by a “+”)

Species	Total Habitat Units
McNary	
• Mallard (wintering)	+ 13,744
• Mallard (nesting)	-6,959
• Western Meadowlark	-3,469
• Canada Goose	-3,484
• Spotted Sandpiper	-1,363
• Yellow Warbler	-329
• Downy Woodpecker	-377
• Mink	-1,250
• California Quail	-6,314
John Day	
• Lesser Scaup	+14,398
• Great Blue Heron	-3,186
• Canada Goose	-8,010
• Spotted Sandpiper	-3,186
• Yellow Warbler	-1,085
• Black-capped Chickadee	-869
• Western Meadowlark	-5,059
• California Quail	-6,324
• Mallard	-7,399
• Mink	-1,437
The Dalles	
• Lesser Scaup	+2,068
• Great Blue Heron	-427
• Canada Goose	-439
• Spotted Sandpiper	-534
• Yellow Warbler	-170
• Black-capped Chickadee	-183
• Western Meadowlark	-247
• Mink	-330
Bonneville	
• Lesser Scaup	+2,671
• Great Blue Heron	-4,300
• Canada Goose	-2,443
• Spotted Sandpiper	-2,767
• Yellow Warbler	-163
• Black-capped Chickadee	-1,022
• Mink	-1,622
Dworshak	
• Canada Goose-(breeding)	-16
• Black-capped Chickadee	-91
• River Otter	-4,312
• Pileated Woodpecker	-3,524
• Elk	-11,603
• White-tailed Deer	-8,906
• Canada Goose (wintering)	+323
• Bald Eagle	+2,678
• Osprey	+1,674
• Yellow Warbler	+119

Table 11-4 (cont.) Estimated Losses Due to Hydropower Construction
(losses are preceded by a “-”, gains by a “+”

Species	Total Habitat Units
Minidoka	
• Mallard	+174
• Redhead	+4,475
• Western Grebe	+273
• Marsh Wren	+207
• Yellow Warbler	-342
• River Otter	-2,993
• Mule Deer	-3,413
• Sage Grouse	-3,755
Chief Joseph	
• Lesser Scaup	+1,440
• Sharp-tailed Grouse	-2,290
• Mule Deer	-1,992
• Spotted Sandpiper	-1,255
• Sage Grouse	-1,179
• Mink	-920
• Bobcat	-401
• Lewis’ Woodpecker	-286
• Ring-necked Pheasant	-239
• Canada Goose	-213
• Yellow Warbler	-58

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22

Monitor and Evaluate Wildlife Efforts at Non-federal Projects

Non-federal hydroelectric projects are licensed by the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission. The Electric Consumers Protection Act of 1986 (ECPA) mandates that the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission give equal consideration to the protection, mitigation of damage to, and enhancement of wildlife in licensing and relicensing decisions.

Mitigation Considerations in Dam Licensing Decisions

Federal Energy Regulatory Commission

In developing license conditions, take into account to the fullest extent practicable the policies established in this section, and the measures taken by Bonneville and others to implement this section. In particular, it is important to take into account the mitigation efforts at federal projects undertaken pursuant to this section, to ensure that license conditions are consistent with and complement these wildlife mitigation projects and contribute fully and proportionately to regional wildlife mitigation goals.

1 **Council**

2

3 The Council will monitor the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission licensing and
4 relicensing proceedings and comment or intervene where appropriate.

|

1 **Appendix D. Findings**

2 | To be developed.

3

4 **Appendix E. Analysis of the Adequacy, Efficiency, Economy and**
5 **Reliability of the Power System.**

6 | To be developed.

7

8 **Appendix F. Estimates of Hydropower-Related Losses;**

9 | -“Compilation of -Information on Salmon and Steelhead Losses in the Columbia River

10 | Basin” and “Numerical Estimates of Hydropower-Related Losses” from the 1987 Fish and

11 | Wildlife Program.